

Hello!

الصف الثالث الثانوى

(الجزء الأول)

By

Mohamed Abdel Aal   Emad Fawzy   Yacoub Moawad







Unit 1 Writers and stories

Objectives

Listening	:	Listening for gist, for detail and to interpret meaning
Grammar	:	Past simple, past continuous and past perfect
Reading	:	Reading for specific information
Critical thinking	:	Understanding the importance of literature and education
Functions	:	Expressing opinions
Writing	:	A summary







Key Vocabulary

Word	Meaning
attachment (n)	مُلحَق/مُرفَق
average (n)	متوسط/معدل
believer (n)	مؤمن
collection (n)	مجموعة
confused (adj)	مُرتبك
custom (n)	عادة
disabled (adj)	معاق
district (n)	منطقة/حى
establish (v) (ed)	يوطد قدمه/يرسخ/يؤسس
insist (v) (ed)	يصر
law (n)	القانون
midday (n)	منتصف النهار
old-fashioned (adj)	ذو طراز قديم
pioneers (n)	رواد
poetry (n)	الشِّعر
publisher (n)	ناشر/دار نشر
routine (n)	روتين (نظام معتاد)/نمط
secretary (n)	سكرتير/سكرتيرة
style (n)	أسلوب

Vocabulary on Listening

Word	Meaning
adventure (n)	مغامرة
article (n)	مقال
break (n) (v)	راحة/فسحة/يكسر
check (v) (ed)	يتأكد/يفحص
competition (n)	منافسة/مسابقة
fixed (adj)	ثابت
form (n) (v) (ed)	شكل/يشكل/يكوّن
headache (n)	صداع
national (adj)	قومى
novels (n)	روايات
prize (n)	جائزة
report (n)	تقرير
science fiction (n)	خيال علمى
type (v) (d)	يكتب (على آلة كاتبة أوكمبيوتر)
writer (n)	كاتب



Vocabulary on Reading

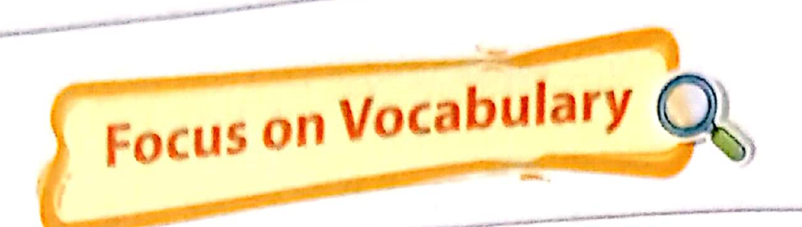
career (n)	مهنة/حياة عملية	graduate (v) (d) (n)	يتخرج/خريج
culture (n)	ثقافة	interested (adj)	مهتم
develop (v) (ed)	يطور/يتطور	literature (n)	الأدب
diplomat (n)	دبلوماسى	respected (adj)	محترم
earthquake (n)	زلزال	society (n)	مجتمع
experiences (n)	تجارب/خبرات	support (v) (ed)	يساند/يدعم

Critical Thinking, Communication & Workbook Vocabulary

area (n)	منطقة	obey (v) (ed)	يطيع
author (n)	مؤلف	politician (n)	سياسى/رجل سياسة
century (n)	قرن (١٠٠ عام)	routinely (adv)	بطريقة نمطية أو منتظمة
coach (n)	مدرب	rules (n)	قواعد
continue (v) (d)	يستمر	show (v)	يبين/يوضح
editor (n)	رئيس تحرير/محرر	sound (v) (ed)	يبدو
education (n)	التعليم	successful (adj)	ناجح
fact (n)	حقيقة	system (n)	نظام
fiction (n)	خيال	traditional (adj)	تقليدى
improve (v) (d)	يحسن/ يطور	transplant (n)	نقل (زرع) عضو
journalist (n)	صحفى	typical (adj)	نموذجى
manager (n)	مدير	unusual (adj)	غير عادى
non-fiction (n)	واقع/غير خيالى		







Word	Definition
attachment (n) ملحق/مرفق	something you attach to/send with an email
average (n) متوسط/معدل	the amount you get by adding several quantities together and then dividing them by the number of quantities
believer (n) مؤمن	someone who believes that a particular idea or thing is very good
collection (n) مجموعة	a set of similar things that you keep together
confused (adj) مرتبك	unable to understand something clearly
custom (n) عادة	something that people do because it is traditional
disabled (adj) معاق	unable to use part of the body in the way that most people do
district (n) منطقة/حى	an area of a city or a town
establish (v) يوطد قدمه/يرسخ	to give someone a respected position in society or in an organisation
insist (v) يصر	demand that something should be done
law (n) قانون	the system of rules that people in a country or place must obey
midday (n) منتصف النهار	twelve o'clock in the middle of the day
old-fashioned (adj) ذو طراز قديم	not modern and not fashionable anymore

pioneer (n) رائد	one of the first people to do something that others will continue to develop
poetry (n) الشِّعر	poems in general
publisher (n) ناشر/دار نشر	a person or company that produces books, magazines, etc. and makes them available for people to buy
routine (n) روتين	a usual way in which you do things
secretary (n) سكرتير/سكرتيرة	someone whose job is to type letters, arrange meetings, answer telephone calls, etc. in an office
style (n) أسلوب	a way of doing something that is typical of a particular person, group or period

Expressions & Idioms

as far as I'm concerned	من وجهة نظرى
ask for opinion	يطلب رأيًا
at the same time	فى نفس الوقت
(be) made into a film	تحول إلى فيلم
(be) thought of as	يفكر فيه (يعتبر) كـ
create (develop) a new style	يبتكر أسلوبًا جديدًا
establish him as	يحقق له مكانة كـ
gave him experiences	أعطته (منحته) الخبرات
gave me a headache	سبب لى صداعًا
go wrong	يسوء/يتعطل
graduate in law	يحصل على شهادة فى القانون
have a fixed routine	لديه روتين ثابت
look old-fashioned	يبدو موضة قديمة
win a prize for	يفوز بجائزة لـ
work for a publisher	يعمل لدى ناشر

Phrases & Prepositions

believer in	مؤمن بـ	know about	يعرف عن
expert on (in/at)	خبير فى	speak to	يتحدث لـ
full of	ملىء بـ	succeed in	ينجح فى
give to	يعطى إلى	think of	يفكر فى
give up	يتخلى عن/يقلع عن	translate into	يترجم إلى
happy with	سعيد بـ	type (something) onto	يكتب على (الكمبيوتر)
interested in	مهتم بـ		

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
attach	يُلحِق/يُرفِق	attachment	مُلحَق/مُرفَق	attached	متصل
believe	يؤمن/يصدق	belief believer	اعتقاد مؤمن	believable	يمكن تصديقه
collect	يجمع	collection	مجموعة	collective	جمعى/جماعى
compete	يتنافس	competition	منافسة/مسابقة	competitive	تنافسى
------------------------		culture	ثقافة	cultural	ثقافى
disable	يعوق	disability	إعاقة	disabled	معاق
develop	يطور/ يتطور	development	تطور	developed	متطور
establish	يوطد قدمه/يرسخ	establishment	تأسيس	established	مؤسس/ذو مكانة
experience	يجرب	experience	تجربة/خبرة	experienced experimental	ذو خبرة تجريبى
------------------------		fashion	موضة	fashionable	مساير للموضة
graduate	يتخرج	graduation graduate	التخرج خريج	------------------------	

improve يحسن	improvement تحسين	improved محسن
interest يثير اهتمام	interest اهتمام	interested مهتم interesting مشوق
manage يدير	management إدارة	managerial إدارى
------------------------------	pioneer رائد	pioneering رائد
publish ينشر	publisher ناشر/دار نشر	published مطبوع/منشور
respect يحترم	respect احترام	respected محترم

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
attach	يصل/يرفق	connect	detach يفصل
average	متوسط	ordinary	extraordinary /unique متميز
collection	مجموعة/تجميع	set	separation/ division تقسيم/ فصل
competition	منافسة/مسابقة	race/contest	agreement/compromise اتفاق/ تسوية
confused	مرتبك	puzzled	clear-headed صافى الذهن
continue	يستمر	proceed	stop يوقف/ يتوقف
develop	يطور/يتطور	evolve/ advance	decline ينحدر
disabled	معاق	handicapped	healthy/normal بصحة جيدة/طبيعى
establish	ينشئ/يؤسس	base	destroy يدمر
fixed	ثابت/محدد	settled	flexible مرن
improve	يحسن	progress	decline يتدهور
old-fashioned	ذو طراز قديم	outdated	fashionable مساير للموضة
respected	محترم	admired	disrespected غير محترم
traditional	تقليدى	conventional	untraditional غير تقليدى
typical	نموذجى	classic	different مختلف



Important Language Notes

Make & Do

Make يصنع/يعمل

- تستخدم للتعبير عن إنتاج/صنع/بناء شيء.

make a noise	يحدث ضوضاء	make a table	يصنع منضدة
make a speech	يلقى خطابًا	make arrangements	يقوم بترتيبات
make a mistake	يخطئ	make parts	يصنع أجزاء
make a difference	يحدث فرقًا/يؤثر	make a decision	يتخذ قرارًا
make money	يجنى مالًا	make a profit	يحقق ربحًا
make a choice	يختار	make friends	يتخذ أصدقاء/يكون صداقات
make a suggestion	يقدم اقتراحًا	make a promise	يقدم وعدًا

Do يفعل/يعمل/يقوم

- تستخدم للتعبير عن أداء عمل/مهمة/أنشطة.

do homework	يؤدى الواجب	do well	يؤدى جيدًا
do a survey	يقوم بدراسة/استطلاع رأى	do a job	يقوم بمهمة/وظيفة
do an operation/do a surgery	يجرى عملية جراحية	do research on/into	يقوم ببحث على
do work	يقوم بالعمل	do the shopping	يتسوق
do a project	يقوم بمشروع	do the cooking	يقوم بعملية الطهى
do the cleaning	يقوم بالتنظيف	do a favour	يقدم خدمة أو معروفًا
do the washing up	يقوم بغسل الأطباق	do an experiment	يجرى تجربة



Other Language Notes

custom | **customs** | **customer** | **costume**

عادة/عادات

custom(s)

- It's the custom in most countries for a bride to wear a white dress in her wedding party.

الجمرك (دائمًا جمع)

customs

- The traveller was asked about the laser machine in customs. (by customs officers)

زبون/زبائن

customer(s)

- Discounts are available for our regular customers.

زى/لباس (الملابس التى يرتديها المؤدون للعروض فى مسرحية أو فيلم)

costume(s)

- The actors were all dressed in 18th century costume.
- My aunt designs costumes for the theatre.

win | **beat** | **gain** | **earn**

يفوز بـ/يكسب

win

(match - medal - prize - race - competition - game - elections)

- Which team do you think will win the next World Cup?

يهزم/يتغلب على (شخص أو فريق)

beat

(a person - a team)

- England needed to beat Germany to get to the final.

يكتسب/يحصل على شيء معنوى (خبرة/وزن/سرعة/شهرة)

gain

(experience - weight - speed - fame)

- I've gained a lot of weight this winter.
- They gained a lot of information during the conference.

يجنى/يكسب (من خلال العمل)

earn

(money - living)

- He doesn't earn much money, but he enjoys his work.
- He works hard to earn his living. يكسب رزقه



publish **spread** **prevail**

publish — ينشر (كتابًا/مجلة/صحيفة)
- All of these magazines are published by one organisation.

spread — ينشر/ينتشر (أمراض/شائعات)
- Rats and flies spread diseases.
- The fire spread rapidly because of the strong wind.

prevail — يسود/يعم
- In the end, justice prevailed and the men were set free.

work **job** **career** **profession**

work — عمل/مكان العمل (اسم لا يعد)
- I started work when I was sixteen.
- Much of the heavy work on farms is now done by machines.

works — أعمال فنية أو أدبية (اسم يعد)
- The works of Naguib Mahfouz are still read all over the world.

job — وظيفة (اسم يعد)

(look for/apply for/find) a job

- It's not his job to tell us what we can and can't do.
- I've applied for several jobs without success.

career — مهنة (الحياة العملية للفرد)
- Choosing a career can be a very difficult decision.

profession — مهنة (تحتاج إلى مؤهلات وتدريب)

(the medical الطبية/legal القضاء/nursing/teaching profession)

- We admit that a few members of our profession have behaved badly.

insist on **insist that**

insist on + (v-ing) or (noun) — يصر على
- He has insisted on his innocence from the beginning.
- He insisted on paying the bill.

insist (that) + (sentence جملة) — يصر أن
- She insisted that we should stay at her house instead of a hotel.



the + adjective صفة

- استخدام the قبل الصفة يحولها إلى اسم يشمل كل من يتصف بهذه الصفة:

the poor	الفقراء	the disabled	المعاقون
the rich	الأغنياء	the injured	المصابون

present prize reward award

present هدية
- I'm going to buy a wedding present for my sister.

prize جائزة
- You can win a prize if you practise harder for the race.

reward مكافأة
- The young clerk has received a reward for being hardworking at the office.

award وسام/جائزة رسمية
- Mohamed Salah received the Player of the Year Award in England in 2018.

respected respectful

respected محترَم (يحترمه الناس بسبب القيمة أو الأداء)
- Yehia Haqqi is respected for his simple style in the Egyptian Literature.

respectful محترِم (يظهر الاحترام أو يتعامل به)
- You should be more respectful of other people's points of view.

diplomat politician

diplomat دبلوماسى (يمثل بلده فى بلد أو منظمة خارج البلاد)
- Yehia Haqqi worked as a diplomat in many countries.

politician رجل سياسة (يعمل بالسياسة أو عضو برلمان)
- All politicians are working hard to win the next elections انتخابات.



Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Could you .... me a favour and pass these sandwiches round?
   a) make b) do c) take d) ask
2. The company said it .... a profit of about 5 million pounds this year.
   a) made b) did c) took d) asked
3. Leaving a job for a new one is a difficult choice to ....
   a) search b) do c) offer d) make
4. The research was .... by a team of scientists at Alexandria University.
   a) made b) carried c) done d) detained
5. I .... a promise to my mother that I will come top in my next school tests.
   a) did b) offered c) made d) helped
6. With the new players, our team will be a tough one to ....
   a) win b) beat c) gain d) earn
7. The disease .... rapidly in the poor area because of polluted water.
   a) published b) came out c) prevailed d) spread
8. The police offered a/an .... for any information about the robbery.
   a) present b) award c) reward d) prize
9. It's sad that so many young people are unable to find .... these days.
   a) jobs b) works c) careers d) professions
10. Many young people don't pay much attention to their society's .... and traditions.
    a) costumes b) customers c) customs d) customaries

Listening Text

(1) قصيدة
(2) منافسة

Interviewer: When did you start writing?

Writer: I first wrote stories and poems when I was at primary school.

Interviewer: What was the first thing you wrote?

Writer: When I was seven, I wrote a poem [(1)] which won second prize in a national competition [(2)] for school children.



Interviewer: When did you start writing stories?



Writer : When I was at university, I wrote short stories for a student magazine. My head was always full of ideas. While I was finishing one story, I was planning the next one.

Interviewer: Didn't you get confused[3]?

Writer : Not really. I used to write very quickly. I finished most short stories in two or three days. As soon as I had finished one story, I started the next one.

Interviewer: Do you still write like that?

Writer : No, I don't write short stories now. Now, I only write novels - they take much longer.

Interviewer: So how do you write now? Do you have a fixed routine[4]?

Writer : Yes. I write from nine in the morning till three in the afternoon, with a ten-minute break[5] for coffee at midday.

Interviewer: Do you use a computer?

Writer : No, I'm old-fashioned[6] - I use a pencil and paper. I used a computer for a few weeks, but it gave me a headache. So first I write something by hand, then my secretary types it onto the computer. My publisher insists that I send everything as an email attachment[7].

Interviewer: How many words do you write usually?

Writer : I write one thousand new words a day for a week. Then I spend two or three days checking the week's work until I'm completely happy. I'd changed my last novel six times before I was happy with it.

Interviewer: Do you show other people?

Writer : No, not until a novel's almost finished. Then I give it to two or three good friends and ask them for their opinions.

Interviewer: Do they ever tell you they don't like what you've written?

Writer : Yes! Last year both of the people who read one of my books said they didn't like how my story ended. So I changed it.

Interviewer: What did you think of the ending of your last story?

Writer : When I finished it, I thought it was my best ending yet!

Interviewer: That's very interesting. Thank you for talking to me.

Writer : You're welcome.

(3) مرتبك
(4) روتين محدد
(5) راحة
(6) ذو طراز قديم
(7) ملحق/مرفق





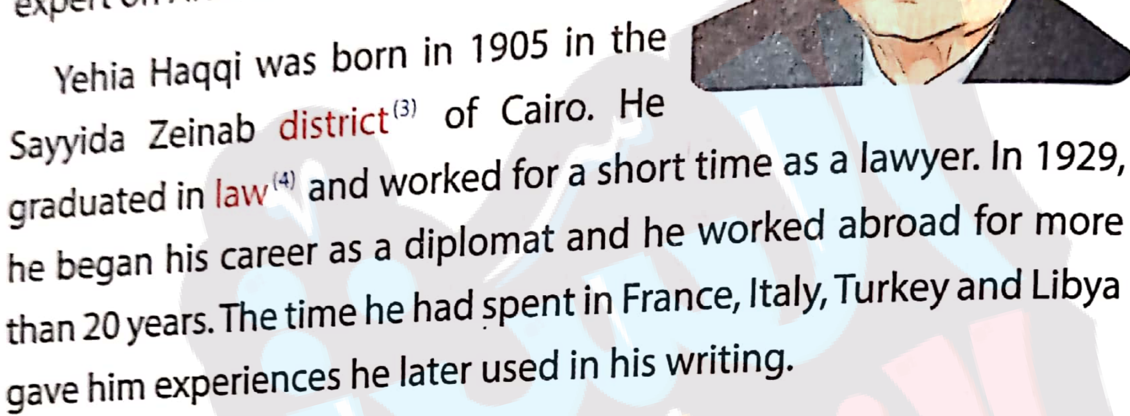
Reading Text

Yehia Haqqi (1905-1992)



Yehia Haqqi was one of the pioneers[1] of modern Egyptian Literature[2]. As well as being an important writer, he was an expert on Arab culture.

Yehia Haqqi was born in 1905 in the Sayyida Zeinab district[3] of Cairo. He graduated in law[4] and worked for a short time as a lawyer. In 1929, he began his career as a diplomat and he worked abroad for more than 20 years. The time he had spent in France, Italy, Turkey and Libya gave him experiences he later used in his writing.



At the same time as he was working, Haqqi was also writing stories. His first short story, published in 1925, established[5] him as one of the greatest short story writers of the Arab world.

Haqqi always wanted to help poor and disabled people. In 1955, he wrote a collection[6] of short stories about the poor and the disabled[7] which won an important prize. One of his novels, *The Postman*, was made into a film. In 1992, he had to go to hospital after an earthquake in Cairo, but gave his bed to a poor person who he thought needed it more.

Haqqi wrote in a new way about Arab society and customs[8] in the twentieth century. Haqqi was also interested in the Arabic language and he developed[9] a new style[10] of writing which is respected[11] today.

As well as writing his own novels and stories, Haqqi also translated Russian, French, Italian and Turkish literature into Arabic. He was a very strong believer[12] in the power of books and he supported[13] many young Egyptian writers. Haqqi died in 1992, but is still thought of as the father of the modern short story and the novel in Egypt.

(1) رواد
(2) الأدب
(3) منطقة/حى
(4) القانون
(5) أسس
(6) مجموعة
(7) المعاقون
(8) عادات
(9) طور
(10) أسلوب
(11) محترم
(12) مؤمن
(13) يساند/يدعم

Notes on some sentences from (Listening & Reading) texts

1 What was the first thing you wrote?

- محذوف من الجملة السابقة that بعد thing لأنها تشير إلى المفعول.

2 .... I spend two or three days checking the week's work ....

- بعد الفعل spend بمعنى يقضى الوقت نستخدم (v + ing).

3 Yehia Haqqi was one of the pioneers of modern Egyptian literature.

- بعد one of يأتى اسم جمع.

4 His first short stories, published in 1925, established him as one of ....

- الفعل published مبنى للمجهول والجملة محذوف منها which + v. to be وأصلها which was published.

5 ...., with a ten-minute break for coffee.

- تعتبر ten-minute صفة للاسم break ولذلك تستخدم بصيغة المفرد وليس الجمع.

6 As well as being an important writer, he was an expert on Arab culture.

As well as writing his own novels and stories, Haqqi also translated ....

- تستخدم (as well as) كأداة ربط بمعنى (بالإضافة إلى) ويتبعها اسم أو صيغة (verb + ing) إذا كان الفاعل فى الجملتين واحدًا.



Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My grandfather's views on the role of women in society are .... He believes they shouldn't work.
   a) cultured b) modern c) updated d) old-fashioned
2. At ...., it is usually very hot in summer because the sun is at its strongest.
   a) midnight b) midday c) midterm d) midyear
3. My friend tries to escape the boring .... of his office life.
   a) red tape b) system c) routine d) rest
4. Many young people prefer modern .... to the classic one written hundreds of years ago.
   a) article b) report c) summary d) poetry
5. My new vacuum cleaner has special .... for cleaning chairs and curtains.
   a) attachments b) connectors c) contacts d) connections
6. A .... is a person or company whose business is to arrange the writing, production, and sale of books or newspapers.
   a) publisher b) journalist c) writer d) programmer
7. The young couple asserted that their wedding hall should be decorated in modern ....
   a) behaviour b) theory c) style d) route
8. The hotel where we spent our holiday is located in one of Alexandria's oldest ....
   a) regions b) districts c) continents d) villages
9. There ought to be a .... against dumping rubbish into streets!
   a) law b) goal c) review d) deal
10. Kentucky Fried Chicken is one of the .... in the fast-food business.
    a) processes b) steps c) surgeries d) pioneers
11. According to Muslim ...., the dead are buried quickly.
    a) customs b) casts c) costumes d) consumers
12. All public places should have facilities for .... people such as wheelchairs and special lifts.
    a) poor b) disabled c) rich d) disable
13. The famous fashion house will advertise its new .... next week.
    a) chain b) collection c) combination d) serial
14. Many children who have a mild ....are integrated in general education.
    a) talent b) gift c) skill d) disability



15 My friend and I are going to enter an athletics .... We all hope to win something.
a) debate b) competition c) profession d) quiz

16 Scientists are paid to .... new medicines every year to help people.
a) do b) have c) take d) develop

17 On ...., women live between five and seven years longer than men.
a) rate b) centre c) average d) middle

18 Doctors and nurses worked 18 hours without a .... because of the train accident.
a) break b) vacation c) holiday d) trip

19 Why do you .... on leaving your dirty clothes all over the floor?
a) persist b) insist c) consist d) depend

20 My father is keen on taking a look at the main .... and international news every day.
a) national b) vague c) nationalistic d) native

21 According to the newspaper ...., the victim died of a knife wound.
a) regard b) resort c) decision d) report

22 Menna .... checks her work, which is why she does so well.
a) rarely b) seldom c) routinely d) badly

23 My friend's father spent most of his .... working in India, so he can speak Hindu very well.
a) work b) career c) childhood d) job

24 The internet gives you the opportunity to know people from different ....
a) houses b) rooms c) cultures d) streets

25 He wrote a book about the .... he got during his trips in Africa.
a) attempts b) tests c) experiment d) experiences

26 Mr Essam .... from Ain Shams University in 1980.
a) graduated b) managed c) went out d) succeeded

27 My sister is studying the German language and .... at university.
a) texture b) literature c) lecture d) picture

28 The novels of Naguib Mahfouz reflect the values of the Egyptian ....
a) district b) area c) coast d) society

29 Everyone .... Mohamed Salah in his campaign for fighting drugs.
a) supports b) lets c) allows d) gives

30 The hotel has improved facilities for the .... There are new lifts and wheelchairs.
a) poor b) disabled c) rich d) disable

31 The minister's main objective is to .... educational systems.
a) prove b) reduce c) approve d) improve

32 The restaurant is now under new .... and is making great profits.
a) management b) settlement c) installment d) argument

33. The soldiers of the army are trained to get used to .... orders.
 a) obeying b) disobeying c) refusing d) agreeing
34. Many women have abandoned their .... role as wife and mother because of work burdens.
 a) fake b) traditional c) unusual d) imitative
35. The boy is wrapping a/an .... for his mother on her birthday.
 a) prize b) award c) present d) reward
36. Yunus is a regular .... of that shop because he likes the service there.
 a) custom b) consumer c) costumer d) customer
37. Her artistic style has .... considerably since she began studying with us.
 a) proved b) developed c) approved d) proofed
38. Soldiers returning from the war soon .... the disease through most of the region.
 a) spread b) published c) prevailed d) sowed
39. The .... of vaccines to prevent diseases has helped to save many lives.
 a) styling b) development c) establishment d) custom
40. Three scientists from Europe shared the Nobel .... for Chemistry in 2017.
 a) Present b) Reward c) Prize d) Trophy
41. The windows of the building are .... of houses built during the last century.
 a) alike b) different c) representative d) typical
42. My teacher advised me to take a .... break between study sessions.
 a) ten-minutes b) ten-minute c) ten-minute's d) ten-minutes'
43. Many people are still fond of watching science.................. films.
 a) fact b) faction c) fiction d) capture
44. My father used to let me .... him at chess so as to help me like it.
 a) win b) gain c) beat d) earn

Expressions, idioms, prepositions, derivatives, synonyms and antonyms — Exercises

45. Mona's husband is away, so she will have to .... all the arrangements for their child's birthday party.
 a) do b) make c) work d) play
46. Most of Naguib Mahfouz's novels were .... into films.
 a) made b) done c) designed d) prepared
47. The new film .... the young man as one of the best directors in the country.
 a) built b) sounded c) founded d) established
48. My sister always complains that she has to .... the washing up alone.
 a) do b) make c) help d) mend

49 I left the party because the loud music was .... me a headache.
a) taking b) giving c) making d) doing

50 Although my cousin isn't very rich, she buys the most .... clothes she can afford.
a) fashionably b) fashion c) fashionable d) old-fashioned

51 The boy got low marks because he .... a lot of mistakes in the test.
a) done b) worked c) mended d) made

52 The word "decline" is an antonym to the word ....
a) improve b) prove c) hurt d) damage

53 The secretary .... a great job of organising the press conference for her manager.
a) made b) did c) fixed d) worked

54 The writer's work as a diplomat .... him experiences which he used in his novels.
a) made b) took c) gave d) did

55 The head teacher .... a promise to deal with my problem immediately.
a) did b) made c) devised d) worked

56 My cousin graduated .... German last year and now works as an interpreter.
a) with b) for c) at d) in

57 The word "connect" is a synonym to the word ....
a) detach b) separate c) attach d) design

58 The player has decided to give .... football at the end of this season.
a) in b) away c) out d) up

59 My father is a great .... in healthy eating and exercise.
a) believe b) belief c) believable d) believer

60 Haqqi developed a new style of writing which is .... today.
a) respectful b) respect c) respected d) respecting

61 People living in town are not happy .... the decision to build a new factory.
a) with b) at c) in d) for

62 The word "conventional" is similar in meaning to the word ....
a) modern b) traditional c) developed d) declined

63 Nabawia Musa played a/an .... role in women's education.
a) trivial b) pioneering c) unimportant d) valueless

64 Fahmy got his .... personality from his father, who was another great athlete.
a) competitive b) competition c) compete d) comparative

65 He had to buy a lot of different numbers of magazines to .... his research.
a) work b) make c) do d) build

66 The word "decline" can be the opposite to the word ....

a) damage b) connect c) contact d) develop

67 The .... of this charity was chiefly to assist orphans.

a) established b) establish c) establishment d) disestablish

Previous Exams Exercises

68 Yehia Haqqi graduated in law and worked for some time as a .... (السودان ٢٠١١)

a) lawyer b) diplomat c) sailor d) journalist

69 Dr Zewail is more than just a Nobel Prize winner; he's a/an .... in chemistry. (ث.ع ٢٠١٢)

a) investor b) explorer c) pioneer d) politician

70 They have just received this photo as an email .... (السودان ٢٠١٢)

a) post b) attachment c) letter d) part

71 My daily .... begins when my alarm clock goes off at 6.30. (السودان ٢٠١٢)

a) routine b) custom c) red tape d) traditions

72 I really admire Charles Dickens as a novelist as his writing .... is unique. (ث.ع ٢٠١٥)

a) behaviour b) attitude c) style d) conduct

73 A/An .... is a person who represents his country all over the world. (ث.ع ٢٠١٥)

a) musician b) actor c) diplomat d) journalist

74 Doctors and nurses belong to the medical .... (السودان ٢٠١٨)

a) work b) job c) career d) profession

75 The company sent me the report as an email .... (الأزهر ٢٠١١)

a) letter b) article c) picture d) attachment

76 My friend has recently .... a prize in a poetry competition. (السودان ٢٠١٩)

a) rewarded b) awarded c) won d) gained

77 The noise outside has made me ...., so I can't concentrate. (السودان ٢٠١٩)

a) confusion b) confusing c) confused d) confuse

78 The ambassador is a .... representing his country in a foreign country. (السودان ٢٠١٩)

a) journalist b) technician c) diplomat d) director

79 His charitable organisation .... him as one of the greatest men in history. (ث.ع ٢٠١٩)

a) finished b) punished c) established d) published

80 Some film stars have a unique .... of performance. (ث.ع ٢٠١٩)

a) collection b) fashion c) style d) behave





The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضى البسيط

Form: التكوين	Subj + التصريف الثانى للفعل • I/He/They passed the exam.
Negative: النفى	Subj + didn't + inf. • I/He/They didn't watch the match.
Interrogative: الاستفهام	Did + subj + inf.? • Did the police arrest the criminal? Wh-word + did + subj + inf.? • Where did you find your book?



Usage الاستخدام

1. **For an action which began and finished in the past.**
   يستخدم لحدث بدأ وانتهى فى الماضى.
   - She visited London in 2010.
   - We were in Cairo a week ago.

2. **For actions which happened immediately one after the other in the past.**
   للأحداث التى حدثت تباعًا واحدًا تلو الآخر فى الماضى. (ليس هناك فارق زمنى لكى نستخدم الماضى التام).
   - When he had an idea, he wrote a short story.
   - First he paid the driver, then he got out of the taxi.

3. **For past habits which are now finished. (We can also use "used to").**
   للعادات التى كانت فى الماضى ولم يعد لها وجود الآن.
   - I always ate breakfast before I went to school when I was young.
   - Communications used to be different a hundred years ago.

The past simple is used with the following time expressions:

yesterday, last night / week / month / year / Friday, etc., two days / weeks / months ago, then, How long ago .....? / in 1900 / 2000 / 2012, the other day, once / in the past, etc.

- People had very simple lives 50 years ago.
- How long ago did she leave her work?



used to – be (get) used to

a) (used to + inf.): didn't use to + inf.
b) (be used to: am/is/are (not) used to + (v-ing form/noun/pronoun)

a) (used to) expresses past habits, regularly repeated actions in the past.

- تعبر used to عن عادات فى الماضى أو أحداث كانت متكررة ولم تعد تحدث الآن.

- He used to be slim when he was young but now he isn't.
- We didn't use to have mobile phones 20 years ago.

b) (be used to) means 'be accustomed to', 'be in the habit of'.

- تعبر be (get) + used to + v-ing/noun/pronoun عن عادة فى الماضى ومازالت تحدث الآن.

- My father is very active. He is used to getting up early.
- I didn't like my job at first, but I'm (get) used to it now.
- She isn't used to living in hot climates.

No longer/any longer:

- نستخدم no longer ويأتى بعدها فعل مضارع أو any longer ومعها مضارع منفى بدلًا من used to.

- Osama no longer smokes. = Osama doesn't smoke any longer. = Osama used to smoke.

Check Point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A famous writer .... this book last year.
   a) had written b) was writing c) writes d) wrote
2. The Romans .... Petra nearly two thousand years ago.
   a) have captured b) had captured c) captured d) capture
3. When Ahmed was younger, he .... to the beach every day.
   a) has gone b) went c) had gone d) goes
4. What games .... to play with your friends when you were younger?
   a) did you use b) have you used c) were you using d) had you used
5. The children opened the boxes and .... out the books.
   a) taken b) take c) taking d) took



Extra Points

1) Using (for) with past simple.

- يستخدم الماضى البسيط مع for للتعبير عن سيرة الشخص الذاتية أو أحداث استمرت لفترة زمنية وانتهت.

- My father went to the Faculty of Commerce for four years.
- My grandfather lived in Italy for 5 years.

2) We use the past simple not used to with exact days, times, number of times and periods of time.

- نستخدم الماضى البسيط وليس used to مع الأيام والأوقات وعدد المرات.

- I went to the library 3 times last week. (~~not used to go~~)

3) With (always – never – often, etc.) to express habits in the past.

- يستخدم مع نفس كلمات المضارع البسيط ليدل على العادة فى الماضى.

- When he was a child, he always walked to school.
- I never thought that it would be possible to buy things on the internet.

4) Object + (be + used) to + Inf. or for + v-ing = passive

- إذا جاء قبل be used to فاعل غير عاقل فيأتى بعدها المصدر وفى هذه الحالة يكون المعنى (يستخدم) وليس يعتاد.

- The underground metro is used to carry/ for carrying people to their destinations.

5) get used to = become accustomed to.

- نستخدم (get used to + n/v-ing) التعود على الشىء بالتدريج.

- He didn't like using this computer at first, but he got used to it.
- She will soon get used to wearing contact lenses (عدسات لاصقة).

6) Some confusing verbs when used in the past:

- بعض الأفعال المربكة عند استخدامها فى الماضى ولذلك يجب حفظ تصريفها جيدًا.

1)	fall	يسقط/يقع	fell	fallen
	fell	يوقع/يقطع شجرة	felled	felled
2)	find	يجد	found	found
	found	يؤسس	founded	founded
3)	lie	يستلقى/يضطجع	lay	lain
	lay	تضع البيض/تعد منضدة	laid	laid
4)	wind	يلف/يبرم	wound	wound
	wound	يجرح	wounded	wounded
5)	ring	يتصل/يرن	rang	rung
	ring	يضع دائرة حول	ringed	ringed





2 The Past Continuous Tense زمن الماضى المستمر

Form: التكوين	was/were + v-ing • I was studying English all night yesterday.
Negative: النفى	wasn't/weren't + v-ing • I wasn't reading when the light went out.
Interrogative: الاستفهام	Was/Were + subj. + v-ing? • Was Ali playing when he fell down? Wh-word + was/were + subj. + v-ing? • What were you doing when I phoned you?

Usage الاستخدام

1 For an action which was in progress at a stated time in the past. In the past continuous, as and when mean while:
يستخدم لحدث كان مستمرًا فى وقت محدد فى الماضى وتتساوى **when** و **as** و **while** فى المعنى.

- It was raining heavily at 7 pm yesterday.
- While / As (Just as)/ When I was having breakfast, someone knocked at the door.

2 For an action which was in progress when another action interrupted it.
يستخدم لحدث كان مستمرًا (حدث طويل) عندما قطعه حدث آخر (حدث قصير). الحدث الطويل يوضع فى الماضى المستمر والحدث القصير يوضع فى الماضى البسيط.

- He was driving fast when he ran into اصطدم بـ a big tree.

3 For two actions happening at the same time. حدثان فى وقت واحد.

- Osama was playing games on his computer while Ramy was watching TV.

4 We do not usually use the past continuous with verbs that describe states or senses. We use the past simple.
لا نستخدم الماضى المستمر مع أفعال الحالة والشعور ونستخدم الماضى البسيط فقط.

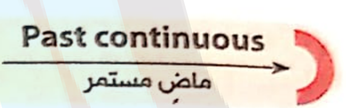
- She seemed ill when I visited her.
- While I was ill, many people visited me.

The past continuous is used with the following time expressions:

While, when, as, all day/night/morning, etc.



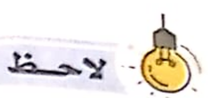




- While we were watching the match, someone knocked on the door.

Past simple ماضٍ بسيط	While/As/ Just as/ When	Past continuous ماضٍ مستمر

- Someone knocked on the door while we were watching the match.



- أنه يمكن وضع الماضى المستمر أو البسيط بعد when على حسب معنى الجملة أيهما مستمر وأيهما قاطع:

- She was cleaning the room when she found her ring.
- When she was cleaning the room, she found her ring.

- ولكى تتقن فهم هذا الزمن لابد أن تعلم أن الحدث المستمر يوضع فى الماضى المستمر والحدث القاطع يوضع فى الماضى البسيط.

Extra Points

1) **While + v-ing** - إذا لم يتبعها فاعل
   - While phoning my friend, I noticed that he was very sad.
2) **During + noun = while + past cont.**
   - During the final match last Friday, the referee sent off three violent players.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I .... a book when my friend arrived.
   a) was reading b) will read c) am reading d) have read
2. Tarek .... dinner at 7 pm yesterday.
   a) had eaten b) was eating c) will eat d) has eaten
3. I first .... stories and poems when I was at primary school.
   a) was writing b) wrote c) write d) had written



(8) I returned home .... mother was preparing lunch.
a) after b) when c) before d) until

(9) I didn't answer the phone because I ....
a) had prayed b) prayed c) pray d) was praying

3 The Past Perfect Tense زمن الماضى التام

Form: التكوين	had + P.P. • By last week, I had written 5 reports.
Negative: النفى	hadn't + P.P. • I hadn't seen him before he talked to me.
Interrogative: الاستفهام	Had + subj. + P.P.? • Had Osama bought the tickets by yesterday? Wh-word + had + subj. + P.P.? • What had she done before going out?



1 For actions which happened immediately one after the other in the past.

يعبر عن حدث تم قبل حدث ماض آخر أو قبل وقت محدد فى الماضى (الحدث الأول ماضٍ تام والثانى ماضٍ بسيط).

- I punished him because he had made many mistakes.
- They couldn't go swimming because they had forgotten their swimsuits.

2 For an action which finished in the past and whose result was visible in the past.

يستخدم لحدث انتهى فى الماضى ونتيجته كانت واضحة فى الماضى.

- The garden was dirty as people had left rubbish everywhere.

The past perfect is used with the following time expressions:

after, as soon as, before, by, by the time, till/until, when, etc.



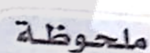
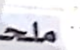




- After I had saved enough money, I bought the car.
- Before I bought the car, I had saved enough money.



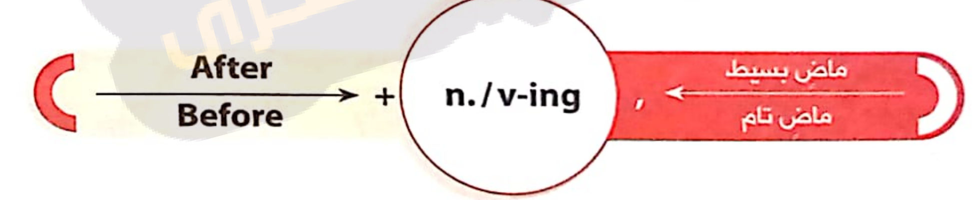
- My son didn't cross the street until he had looked both ways.

ملحوظة - لا يجب حفظ قاعدة واحدة لـ until فالمشكلة ليست فى الشكل بل المعنى فتأمل الأمثلة القادمة:

- He refused to leave the place until he had taken the money.
- He lived in Cairo until he died.
- I wasn't happy until I had passed my exams.
- He wasn't given the job until the boss had signed his application form.
- He couldn't travel until he had got a passport.
- I won't talk to him until he apologises.





- إذا لم يوجد فاعل بعد After أو Before نستخدم n/v-ing.

- After finishing his work, he helped me. = After he had finished ....
- Before helping me, he had finished his work. = Before he helped ....

لاحظ الفرق بين جمل when الآتية.

5 When + Past simple, Past perfect

- When I woke up, my father had left.

غادر والدي قبل استيقاظي. (لم أرَ والدي)

When + Past simple, Past simple

- When I woke up, my father left.

غادر والدي عند استيقاظي. (رأيت والدي)

When + Past perfect, Past simple

- When I had told him the bad news, he fainted.

أخبرته أولاً ثم أغمي عليه ثانيًا.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We ordered our food after we .... at the restaurant.
   a) sitting b) had sat c) sit d) were sitting
2. As soon as I .... a story, I started the next one.
   a) 'd finished b) finish c) have finished d) was finishing
3. We got very wet because we .... to take our umbrellas.
   a) forgotten b) forget c) had forgotten d) have forgotten
4. What did you do after .... school yesterday?
   a) had left b) left c) leave d) leaving
5. When I .... the station, the train left. I caught it.
   a) have reached b) had reached c) reach d) was reaching

Extra Points

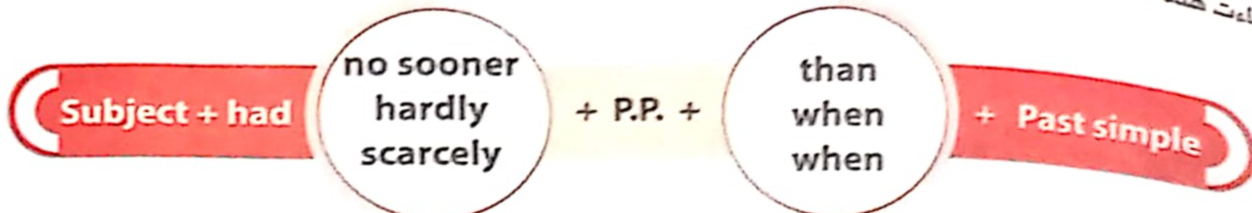
1 No Sooner / Hardly / Scarcely + had + subject + P.P. + than / when / when + Past simple

لم يكد ...... حتى ......

تقديم الفعل المساعد على الفاعل

- No sooner had Marwa lost the money than she reported the police.

إذا جاءت هذه الكلمات فى أول الكلام تكون القاعدة السابقة وإذا لم تأتِ فى أول الكلام يكون الآتى:



- Marwa had hardly lost the money when she reported the police.

2 On + v-ing = When + clause

- On seeing the thief, he ran away. = When he saw the thief, he ran away.

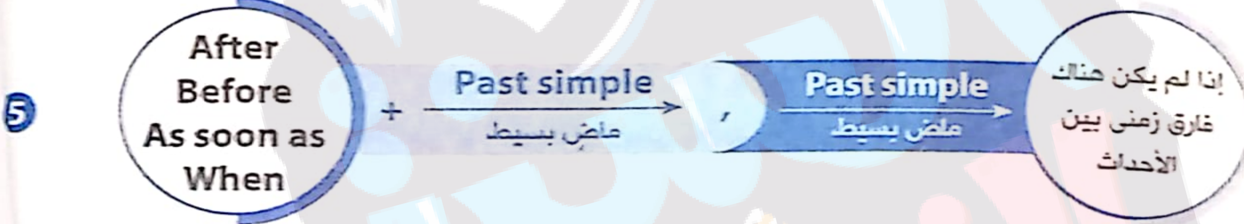
3 By + فترة فى الماضى + Past perfect ماضٍ تام

- By yesterday بحلول أمس , he had reached Paris.

4 Having + p.p. = After + Past perfect ماضٍ تام

- Having booked the tickets, I took the train to Assuit.

5



- When he entered the flat, he took off his shoes.
- After he paid the driver, he got out of the taxi.
- Before he left, he asked me to close the door behind him.
- As soon as he read the story, he gave it to me.

6



- It was only when he had finished his work that he helped me.
- It wasn't until he had finished his work that he helped me.



ملحوظة هامة جدًا: إذا وجد أكثر من حدثين فى الجملة فيجب تحديد الحدث الأول ليوضع فى الماضى التام والأحداث الباقية إما فى الماضى البسيط وإما فى الماضى المستمر حسب المعنى.

- As soon as I saw Ahmed, I realised that I had met him before.

لم نضع الماضى التام بعد as soon as مباشرة لأنه ليس الحدث الأول وأن الحدث الأول هو (المقابلة).

- After he got to the station, he realised that he had left the train ticket at home.

لم نضع الماضى التام بعد After مباشرة لأنه ليس الحدث الأول وأن الحدث الأول هو (ترك التذكرة فى المنزل).

- I was shopping with my friend when I realised that I had lost my wallet.

الحدث الأول فقدان المحفظة.



The Past Simple, Continuous and Perfect استخدامات أزمنة الماضى

«لفهم أزمنة الماضى عليك بمذاكرة الجدول الآتى»

Tense	Form	Usage
Past Simple الماضى البسيط	Subj. + التصريف الثانى	١- للأحداث التى بدأت وانتهت فى وقت محدد فى الماضى. - It rained heavily in our city two days ago. ٢- للأحداث التى حدثت تباعًا واحدًا تلو الأخر. - First, he heard the news. Then, he told me. ٣- للعادات التى استمرت لفترة فى الماضى ولم يعد لها وجود الآن. - When I was young, I walked (used to walk) to school every day. ٤- مع الكلمات الدالة على الماضى ومنها. yesterday, ago, last, then, when and How long ago ...? - My father left for London last Friday.
Past Continuous الماضى المستمر	Subj.+ was/were + v-ing	١- لحدث كان مستمرًا عند وقت محدد فى الماضى (لا نذكر متى بدأ ولا متى انتهى). - They were playing football at 6 o'clock yesterday. ٢- لحدث كان مستمرًا (حدث طويل) عندما قطعه حدث آخر (حدث قصير). - While they were playing football yesterday, it started to rain. ٣- لحدثين كانا مستمرين فى وقت واحد فى الماضى. - While I was driving the car, I was listening to the match. ٤- مع الكلمات الدالة مثل: while, when, as, just as, all day/night, etc. - As she was cooking, she burnt her hand.
Past Perfect الماضى التام	Subj. + had + P.P.	١- لحدث تم قبل حدث آخر فى الماضى أو قبل وقت محدد (الأول تام والثانى بسيط). - I had booked the ticket before I took the train to Assuit. - By yesterday, I had finished my English course. ٢- لحدث انتهى فى الماضى وله نتيجة كانت واضحة فى الماضى. - My brother was over the moon because he had passed all his exams. ٣- مع الكلمات الدالة مثل: after, before, by, by the time, as soon as, when - As soon as he had got his driving licence, he bought a car.

Grammar Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. While Yusuf .... for the bus, it started to rain.
   a) waits b) had waited c) waited d) was waiting
2. We don't live in Assuit now, but we .... there for thirty years.
   a) have lived b) lived c) are living d) live
3. He .... home as soon as he had seen his brother off at the airport.
   a) returns b) had returned c) will return d) returned
4. First, she knocked on the door. Then she .... inside.
   a) had gone b) went c) was going d) goes
5. Sameh had an accident as he .... the street.
   a) had crossed b) was crossing c) crossed d) is crossing
6. While she was waiting for the train, she .... a handbag under a bench.
   a) noticed b) were noticing c) had noticed d) notices
7. After I finished school, I .... English literature at university.
   a) study b) am studying c) have studied d) studied
8. They .... that bridge when I was here last year. They haven't finished it yet.
   a) were building b) built c) had built d) are building
9. I had finished my work before .... the office.
   a) left b) had left c) was leaving d) leaving
10. At the age of seven, my parents .... me to Jordan.
    a) are taking b) were taking c) took d) take
11. Where did you .... to play when you were young?
    a) used b) using c) use d) uses
12. She started her work when she .... the baby to bed.
    a) puts b) has put c) had put d) will put
13. .... the letter after you had written it?
    a) Had you posted b) Did you post c) Have you posted d) Will you post
14. By the age of five, Nesma .... to swim.
    a) is learning b) had learnt c) learns d) was learning
15. When I .... my homework, my sister was helping my mother.
    a) did b) had done c) am doing d) was doing

- While I .... at home, a man knocked on the door and asked for help.
  a) have been b) was c) was being d) had been
- I didn't return home until I .... my work.
  a) finish b) was finishing c) had finished d) have finished
- We .... near a supermarket before we moved to this house.
  a) lived b) have lived c) live d) had been lived
- When I reached the station, the train .... I missed it!
  a) had left b) left c) was leaving d) leaves
- I once .... the newspaper every day. Now I don't have the time.
  a) have read b) used to read c) had read d) was reading
- I was reading a book when you .... me last night.
  a) were phoning b) had phoned c) phoned d) phone
- I .... the police after I had seen the accident.
  a) telephoned b) had telephoned c) was telephoning d) can telephone
- By the time Nada arrived, we .... lunch, so there was nothing for her to eat.
  a) were having b) had c) had had d) have had
- While I was playing football, I .... and broke my leg.
  a) had fallen b) fell c) was falling d) felled
- As soon as we arrived at school, the first lesson ....
  a) begins b) was beginning c) began d) had begun
- What .... when I called you? You sounded very busy.
  a) did you do b) were you doing c) had you done d) are you doing
- I .... my own computer for three years before anything went wrong with it.
  a) had b) 'd had c) was having d) 've had
- It was dark when we reached the beach because the sun .... down.
  a) had gone b) went c) was going d) has gone
- While she was doing her homework, my sister .... to music.
  a) listens b) is listening c) had listened d) was listening
- My mother made me a cake. It .... of lemons.
  a) had tasted b) was tasting c) tasted d) is tasting
- .... the storm, many streets were covered with sand and dust.
  a) After b) While c) By d) Before
- Hardly .... the book when he wrote a report about it.
  a) he reads b) he read c) had he read d) he had read

33 Having .... the licence, he bought a new car.
a) obtain b) had obtained c) obtained d) obtaining

34 It .... for three days. The farmers were very happy to water their fields.
a) rained b) has been raining c) was raining d) is raining

35 After I .... to the stadium, I realised that the match had already started.
a) get b) got c) had got d) was getting

36 My dad .... on business trips to Japan four times last year.
a) used to go b) was going c) had gone d) went

37 During .... to school, I saw some students quarrelling fiercely.
a) walking b) walks c) my walk d) was walking

38 Yesterday, we were discussing the new project and .... a good time as well.
a) had b) having c) have d) being having

39 When I was on holiday, I used to go to bed late every day. That means ....
a) I went to bed late every day
b) I was going to bed late every day
c) I am used to going to bed late every day
d) I go to bed late every day

40 I was walking peacefully when I realised that I .... along the street.
a) was following b) was being followed
c) had been followed d) followed

Previous Exams *Exercises*

41 She .... the city before the school trip. (ث.ع ٢٠١٩ دور أول)
a) has already visited b) had already visited
c) visits d) visiting

42 Luckily, when I .... the station, the train left. (ث.ع ٢٠١٩ دور ثان)
a) reach b) had been reaching
c) reached d) have been reaching

43 Ahmed's car was hit by a driver who .... at a mad speed. (ث.ع ٢٠١٦)
a) was driving b) drive c) was driven d) drives

44 Mona didn't send the message to her father until she .... it. (ث.ع ٢٠١٦)
a) has been writing b) has written
c) had written d) writing

- President Sadat died in 1981, before that our army .... the Suez Canal in 1973. (السودان ٢٠١٦)
  a) crossed b) had crossed
  c) have crossed d) was crossing
- As my mother was exhausted, she fell asleep while .... TV. (ث.ع ٢٠١٥)
  a) was watching b) had watched
  c) watching d) being watched
- Having .... the shopping, mother started to prepare lunch. (ث.ع ٢٠١٥)
  a) do b) she did c) she does d) done
- No sooner .... the noise than we rushed to the spot. (ث.ع ٢٠١٤)
  a) had we heard b) does we hear
  c) we had heard d) we did hear
- Ali .... travelling by sea. (ث.ع ٢٠١١)
  a) used to b) using to
  c) is used to d) uses to
- I turned off the light before .... out. (الأزهر ٢٠١٨)
  a) go b) going c) went d) to go
- By the time he was 12, my son .... all the Holy Quran by heart. (الأزهر ٢٠١١)
  a) had memorised b) memorising
  c) was memorising d) had been memorised
- I .... visit the Pyramids every month when I was in Cairo. (الأزهر ٢٠١١)
  a) used b) used to c) used for d) am used to

Language Functions

Expressing opinions: **التعبير عن الرأى:**

- I think/don't think that ....
- In my opinion, ...
- I'd say that ....
- As far as I'm concerned, ...

Skills Exercises

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:*

Stress is a hidden enemy facing every one of us. The complicated living conditions of our modern age, overcrowded cities, traffic jams, pollution, driving hysterically in the streets, unemployment problems, competitions in jobs, ... etc. have put us under pressure. This pressure causes stress which may lead to nervous breakdown and sometimes to insanity.

When we are under psychological pressure, many parts of our body are affected such as the stomach, head, skin and heart. As a result, we feel tense. This tension sometimes drives a person to commit suicide. Doctors confirm that the main cause of most illnesses results from the consequences of stress.

Many psychiatrists believe that fighting tension can be achieved by relaxation from time to time. 'All work and no play makes Jack a dull boy.' We have to find time to relax and enjoy ourselves. Enjoyment differs from one person to another. You can find it in chatting, having some outdoor sports, walking, running or taking up a certain hobby.

Tension may be relieved if you stop your worries a little. You should be optimistic and always think about the good sides in your life. Pessimism is a deadly enemy that defeats your hopes and aspiration. Don't cry over spilt milk because what is done cannot be undone. A bright dawn always comes after a dark night. The most important thing is to have faith in God who will never forget you even in the most desperate hours.

To conclude, you should always remember that tension would lead you to fatal consequences, which make you sick, miserable and unhappy. Don't forget that the most difficult problem in life has never been the end of the world.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What does much pressure cause?

a) Optimism. b) Stress.
c) Loyalty. d) Aspiration.

What do the underlined words "commit suicide" mean?

a) Be pessimistic. b) Immigrate.
c) Kill oneself. d) Have illness.

★ لترجمة الكلمات الصعبة بقطع الفهم يرجى الرجوع إلى القاموس بنهاية الكتاب.

3. **How can we fight tension as psychiatrists believe?**
   a) By eating much food.
   b) By relaxation from time to time.
   c) By searching for another job.
   d) By helping others with their work.
4. **Why is pessimism considered a deadly enemy?**
   a) It makes you more cheerful.
   b) It makes you hate yourself.
   c) It makes you think positively.
   d) It kills your hopes and aspiration.

B) Answer the following questions:

5. Many parts of our body are affected by pressure. Mention two parts.
6. Illustrate why the person is under pressure. Mention two points.
7. Mention two illnesses that stress may lead to.
8. What do you think a person should do to stop his worries? Give two points.

2 Write an essay of about (180) words on the following topic:

"Which forms of literature do you enjoy most?"

3 Translation:

A) Translate into Arabic:

1. Yehia Haqqi was affected by his long life experiences and the books he translated. These helped him write in a style which attracted different kinds of readers.
2. Yehia Haqqi's new style has influenced young novelists all over the Arab world. He is considered one of the pioneers of modern Arabic Literature.
3. Many people believe that literature can reflect the values of the society and its culture. It can also be the mirror that reflects its flaws and problems.
4. Egypt has always been known as the "Birthplace of Civilisation" because of its long and rich history. Throughout history, it has given great examples of civilised achievements.
5. To enjoy the quality of being right and fair, you should have justice. It is also one of the most important qualities which a good society should have. ثانوية عامة (معدل) ٢٠١١
6. Sports reinforce values important to society, like honest competition and teamwork. That's why they should be included in all educational curricula. ثانوية عامة (معدل) ٢٠١٢

B) Translate into English:

١- يزخر تاريخ مصر بالعديد من الأدباء والمفكرين المبدعين وأحدهم نجيب محفوظ الكاتب العربى الوحيد الحاصل على جائزة نوبل للأدب عام ١٩٨٨.

٢- يستغل صناع الأفلام شهرة الكثير من القصص العالمية بتحويلها إلى أفلام، والكثير منها يحقق أرباحًا كبيرة لهم وتعزز أيضًا أهمية الأدب فى المجتمع.

٣- علينا بترشيد استخدام المياه العذبة وإلا سنواجه شدة الظمأ مستقبلًا؛ لذلك يجب تعزيز مفهوم ترشيد المياه مما يساهم فى حل نقص المياه التى قد تنجم عن مشكلة سد النهضة. (ثانوية عامة [معدل] ٢٠١١)

٤- كان يحيى حقى أحد رواد الأدب المصرى الحديث والثقافة العربية، وما زالت قصصه ومقالاته تجذب محبى القراءة والناشرين فى كثير من معارض الكتاب فى الدول العربية. (ثانوية عامة [معدل] ٢٠١٢)

Enrich your Vocabulary

abound with	يزخر بـ	fair	عادل
birthplace	مهد	flaws	أخطاء
Book fairs	معارض الكتاب	influence	يؤثر
civilisation	الحضارة	justice	العدالة
concept	مفهوم	rationalise	ترشيد
creative thinkers	المفكرون المبدعون	reflect	يعكس
curricula	مناهج	Renaissance Dam	سد النهضة
evidence/ proof	دليل	thirst	العطش
face	نواجه	values	قيم







Open General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. More than a million people in Britain have some degree of learning ....
   a) stability b) disability
   c) instability d) impropriety
2. The supermarket sells a special sort of butter that .... easily even when cold.
   a) divides b) publishes
   c) prevails d) spreads
3. It took us a long time to clear .... at the border.
   a) habit b) tradition
   c) customs d) costume
4. My friend's family live in a very wealthy coastal .... in France.
   a) district b) space
   c) neighbourhood d) area
5. With his camera around his neck, he looked like a .... tourist.
   a) classic b) representative
   c) typical d) characteristic
6. My cousin felt a particular .... to his father's family.
   a) development b) attachment
   c) prevailing d) astonishment
7. Most of the .... who settled in the American West in the 19th century were mainly from Ireland and England.
   a) inventors b) discoverers
   c) pioneers d) painters
8. The President gave the .... of State a mission outside the country.
   a) Secretary b) Director
   c) Official d) Minister
9. The tennis player won the match in fine ...., not losing a single game.
   a) method b) area
   c) design d) style



10 The new airport .... only a hundred flights a month as it is small.
a) estimates
b) appreciates
c) averages
d) exhibits

11 Don't just sit there in silence; .... something.
a) tell
b) say
c) speak
d) talk

12 He prefers watching TV .... listening to the radio.
a) to
b) rather
c) than
d) from

13 Even though he objects to shoulder responsibilities, he was made .... over the company during the absence of the boss.
a) taking
b) took
c) to take
d) had taken

14 .... you mind turning the volume down a little, please?
a) Could
b) Would
c) Should
d) Must

15 Egypt .... to be a peace loving nation.
a) is known
b) to be known
c) to being known
d) been known

16 If I .... you, I would buy a new car to avoid the troubles of this second hand car.
a) were
b) am
c) had been
d) would be

17 Ramy is .... at English than his sister.
a) best
b) the best
c) good
d) better

18 Shimaa walked into the classroom .... her teacher was starting the lesson.
a) as long as
b) by the time
c) until
d) just as

19 Mohamed .... on taking a taxi to the airport.
a) insisted
b) advised
c) suggested
d) congratulated

20 I can't go out .... I've finished doing my household tasks.
a) just as
b) until
c) when
d) by

Test 1 Based on Unit 1

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The city has eight ...., each with a representative on the City Council.
   a) distinctions b) disruptions c) districts d) disputes
2. While .... a cake, Soha burnt her hand.
   a) making b) made c) was making d) being made
3. They still live in the small house they .... 30 years ago.
   a) were buying b) had bought c) bought d) have bought
4. It is a .... to greet someone when you meet them.
   a) routine b) custom c) prize d) customer
5. Using a typewriter is .... Now, we use computers.
   a) fashionable b) modern c) ancient d) old-fashioned
6. When the police saw the thief, they .... to take action and arrest him.
   a) want b) wanted c) were wanting d) had wanted
7. Dr Magdy Yacoub has performed a new type of surgery. He is considered a/an .... in his field.
   a) inventor b) pioneer c) discoverer d) explorer
8. When the old lady returned to her flat, she found that someone had broken in .... her absence.
   a) before b) while c) during d) until
9. After .... his car under a "No parking" sign, the police drove it away.
   a) parking b) parked c) had parked d) park
10. I have a ten- .... break for something to eat at midday.
    a) minutes b) minute c) minute's d) minutes'
11. Having .... the plan for his new project, he asked the bank for a loan.
    a) complete b) had completed c) completing d) completed
12. As we .... down the hill, a strange object appeared in the sky.
    a) drive b) had driven c) were driving d) drove
13. When my father was young, he always .... to work.
    a) was walking b) walked c) had walked d) walks
14. Let's close up the shop early this evening, ...?
    a) won't we b) don't we c) will we d) shall we



15 He had a newspaper .... open on his knee.

a) spread b) published c) issued d) distributed

16 I can't find the remote control ....

a) anywhere b) everywhere c) nowhere d) somewhere

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Everyday activities like listening to an iPod, playing loud video games and going to the movies can put your hearing at risk. Loud noises can damage the inner ear. This type of hearing loss can't be healed. But it can be prevented.

Block, walk and turn--that's what hearing safety experts want you to do when you come across a really loud noise. Block the noise from entering your ears; walk away from it; and turn it down. Those are your first steps in staying safe.

On average, 15% of all school-age children live with some hearing loss. And it's a growing problem.

There are two types of harmful noises: sounds that are too loud and sounds that last too long. Both types can cause permanent damage to the sensitive hair cells in the inner ears that bring sound to the brain.

Most people don't know that listening to headphones at full volume puts your ears at risk. "If your iPod is on the maximum volume, it's too loud," says an expert. "If you listen to it at that level every day, it will cause hearing loss."

When you can't avoid loud noises, wear earplugs or earmuffs to block out sound.

Set your television or stereo to the lowest volume you can hear. If you are with a person who has trouble hearing, turn on the closed-captioning service to show the words on the screen.

If your neighbours use noisy leaf blowers or lawn mowers, close your windows and doors to block the sound. This will also protect you from the sounds of sirens and construction. Add curtains to keep out noise, or carpets to absorb it.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. How can loud noises affect us?

a) They can damage our sight.
b) They can affect our digestion.
c) They can affect our understanding.
d) They can damage the inner ear.



2. **What do hearing safety experts want us to do when we come across a really loud noise?**
   a) Go, walk and run ....
   b) Shake, take and go ....
   c) Block, walk and turn ....
   d) Sleep, wake and turn ....
3. **When can listening to headphones put our ears at risk?**
   a) When we listen to it at high level every day.
   b) When we put it on our ears.
   c) When we listen to it with others.
   d) When we listen to it at low level daily.
4. **What does the underlined pronoun "This" refer to?**
   a) Using noisy leaf blowers.
   b) Using lawn mowers.
   c) Closing our windows and doors.
   d) Adding curtains to keep out noise.

B) Answer the following questions:

5. Illustrate how we can avoid loud noises. Mention two points.
6. Give two examples of everyday activities that put our hearing at risk.
7. What are the two types of harmful noises?
8. What do you think we should do if our neighbours use noisy leaf blowers or lawn mowers? Give two points.

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

Many people misunderstand the true meaning of freedom. Freedom doesn' mean that we have the right to do just as we like. We must respect the freedo. of others.

B) Translate into English:

- تساهم وسائل الإعلام فى توجيه الرأى العام نحو أهمية الثقافة والعلم فى تطوير أى أمة لذلك يجب أن تلتزم بالمعايير الصحيحة والأخبار والتحليلات الصادقة.

4 Write an essay of about (180) words on the following:

A famous Arab writer that you admire.



MY FATHER, AN EGYPTIAN TEACHER

By:
Abdel-Tawab Youssef

Unit 2 Abdel-Tawab Youssef: My Father, an Egyptian Teacher

Objectives

- Listening : Listening for specific information; listening for detail
- Grammar : Present perfect
- Reading : Reading for gist; reading for specific information
- Critical thinking : Understanding the importance of teaching
- Functions : Asking for and giving advice
- Writing : An email giving advice





Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

association (n)	مؤسسة/منظمة	ministry (n)	وزارة
cultural (adj)	ثقافى	plan (n) (v) (ned)	خطة/يخطط
discipline (n) (v) (d)	انضباط/يهذب/يدرب على النظام	political science (n)	علم السياسة
fatherly (adj)	أبوى	responsible (adj)	مسئول
honour (n) (v) (ed)	شرف/يشرف/يتشرف	semicircle (n)	نصف دائرة
importance (n)	أهمية	serious (adj)	جاد/خطير
influence (v) (d) (n)	يؤثر على/تأثير	silence (n) (v) (d)	صمت/يُسكت
layer (n)	طبقة	spoil (v) (ed)	يفسد/يدلل
lecture (n) (v) (d)	محاضرة/يحاضر	strict (adj)	صارم/حازم

Vocabulary on Listening

award (n) (v) (ed)	جائزة/وسام/يمنح وسامًا	life (n)	الحياة
continue (v) (d)	يستمر	magazine (n)	مجلة
divide (v) (d)	يُقسّم	name (v) (d)	يذكر/يسمى
earn (v) (ed)	يكسب	play (n)	مسرحية
event (n)	حدث	set up (v)	يؤسس/ينشئ
grow up (v)	ينمو/يكبر	successful (adj)	ناجح
interviewer (n)	المُحاور (من يُجرى الحوار)	unusual (adj)	غير معتاد



Vocabulary on Reading

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
achieve (v) (d)	يحقق/ينجز	inspire (v) (d)	يلهم/يحث
circle (n)	دائرة	level (n)	مستوى
communicate (v) (d)	يتواصل	natural (adj)	طبيعي
conversation (n)	محادثة/حوار	paintings (n)	رسومات
design (v) (ed) (n)	يصمم/تصميم	prepare (v) (d)	يجهز/يُعد
discussion (n)	مناقشة	qualities (n)	صفات
dream (v) (ed) (n)	يحلم/حلم	realise (v) (d)	يدرك
encourage (v) (d)	يشجع	step (n) (v) (ped)	خطوة/مرحلة/يخطو
fresh (adj)	طازج/حديث	take part (v)	يشارك
gentle (adj)	لطيف	warm (adj)	دافئ/ودى
goal (n)	هدف	warn (v) (ed)	يحذر
head teacher (n)	ناظر المدرسة	worry (v) (y ied)	يقلق
introduction (n)	مقدمة		

Critical Thinking, Communication & Workbook Vocabulary

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
abroad (adv)	بالخارج	function (n)	وظيفة (طريقة أداء)
ache (n) (v) (d)	ألم/ يؤلم	hobby (n)	هواية
among (prep)	بين/وسط	list (n) (v) (ed)	قائمة/ يضع فى قائمة
archaeologist (n)	عالم آثار	material (n)	مادة خام
archaeology (n)	علم الآثار	paper (n)	ورق
behave (v)	يتصرف	partner (n)	شريك
behaviour (n)	سلوك/ تصرف	phrase (n)	عبارة
chat (n) (v) (d)	دردشة/ يدردش	practice (n)	ممارسة
chess (n)	شطرنج	recommend (v) (ed)	يوصى بـ/ يرشح
coin (n)	عملة معدنية	sensible (adj)	عاقل/ حكيم

Word	Meaning
compare (v) (d)	يقارن
decide (v) (d)	يقرر
decision (n)	قرار
demand (n) (v) (ed)	طلب/ يطلب
especially (adv)	بخاصة
similar (adj)	مشابه
summary (n)	ملخص
tour (n)	جولة
trust (v) (ed)	يثق فى
worthwhile (adj)	جدير بالاهتمام

Focus on Vocabulary

Word	Definition
association (n) مؤسسة/منظمة	▸ an organisation for people with the same interests, or who do the same kind of work
cultural (adj) ثقافى	▸ relating to art, music, literature, etc.
discipline (v) يهذب/ يدرب على النظام	▸ to teach someone to obey rules and control their own behaviour
fatherly (adj) أبوى	▸ typical of a kind or concerned father
honour (n) شرف	▸ something that makes you feel proud and happy
importance (n) أهمية	▸ the quality of being important
influenced (v) أثر على	▸ had an effect on the way someone or something develops or behaves
layer (n) طبقة	▸ one of several levels of different materials that are on top of each other
lectured (v) حاضر	▸ talked to a group of people about a subject
ministry (n) وزارة	▸ a government department

plan (n) (v) خطة/يخطط	think about something you want to do, and how you will do it
political science (n) علم السياسة	the study of the ideas and activities that are concerned with how a country is governed
responsible (adj) مسئول	sensible and able to be trusted
semicircle (n) نصف دائرة	a group arranged in a curved line
serious (adj) جاد/خطير	quiet and sensible; doesn't laugh and joke much
silence (v) يُسكت	make someone stop giving their opinions
spoil (v) يفسد/يدلل	let a child have or do whatever they want, with the result that they behave badly
strict (adj) صارم/حازم	making sure that people always obey rules

Expressions & Idioms

conduct a survey	يجرى تقييمًا/دراسة	in fact	فى الواقع
do a project	يقوم بمشروع	keep fit	يحافظ على اللياقة
go on a tour	يذهب فى جولة	make .... worthwhile	يجعله جديرًا بالاهتمام
have health problems	لديه مشكلات صحية	make sure	يتأكد
have the honour	له الشرف	show respect	يظهر الاحترام
have a successful future	لديه مستقبل ناجح	take turns	يتبادل الأدوار



Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
cultural	ثقافى	artistic	primitive	بدائى
discipline	انضباط	control	chaos	فوضى
encourage	يشجع	boost	discourage	يُوهِن العزيمة/يُثَبِّط
fatherly	أبوى	affectionate	cruel	قاسٍ
honour	شرف/ تكريم	esteem	criticism	انتقاد
influence	تأثير	effect	cause	مسبب
introduction	مقدمة	initiation	conclusion	خاتمة
natural	طبيعى	normal	unnatural	غير طبيعى
respect	يحترم/احترام	value	disrespect	يحتقر/ازدراء
responsible	مسئول	reliable	irresponsible	غير مسئول
serious	جاد	tough	funny	مرح
silence	يسكت	mute	agitate	يثير
spoil	يفسد/ يدلل	favour	ignore	يتجاهل
strict	صارم/متشدد	tough	lenient	متساهل
success	نجاح	achievement	failure	فشل

Important Language Notes

Saying Years

- عند قراءة أو قول السنوات فإننا نقسمها إلى جزأين كالتالى:

Year	Reading	Year	Reading
2018	two thousand and eighteen/ twenty eighteen	2020	two thousand and twenty/ twenty twenty
1805	eighteen oh five	2007	two thousand and seven
1666	sixteen sixty-six	1898	eighteen ninety-eight
1998	nineteen ninety-eight	1266	twelve sixty-six

Phrases & Prepositions

Phrase	Meaning	Phrase	Meaning
compare with/ between	يقارن مع	lecture at	يحاضر فى
Concerned with	مهتم بـ	look forward to	يتطلع إلى
dream about/of	يحلم بـ	responsible for	مسئول عن
happen to	يحدث لـ	work for/with	يعمل لدى/ مع
help .... with	يساعد .... فى	worried about	قلق عن
learn about	يعرف عن	write about	يكتب عن

Derivatives

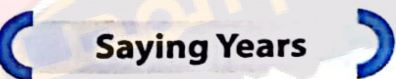
Verb		Noun		Adjective	
achieve	يحقق/ينجز	achievement	إنجاز	achievable	يمكن تحقيقه
associate	يربط	association	جمعية/مؤسسة	associated	مرتبط
communicate	يتواصل	communication	تواصل	communicative	تواصلى
confide	يثق فى	confidence	الثقة	confident	واثق
________		culture	ثقافة	cultural cultured	ثقافى مثقف
differ	يختلف	difference	فرق/اختلاف	different	مختلف
discipline	يُمرِّن/يُهذِّب	discipline	اِنضِباط/نظام	disciplinary	تأديبى
divide	يَقسِم	division	تَقسِيم/قسم	divided	منقسم
influence	يؤثر	influence	تأثير	influential	مؤثر
inspire	يلهم	inspiration	إلهام	inspiring	مُلهم
introduce	يقدم	introduction	مقدمة	introductory	تقديمى
silence	يُسكِت	silence	سُكُوت/صَمت	silent	ساكِت/صامِت
succeed	ينجح	success	نجاح	successful	ناجح



Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
cultural	ثقافى	artistic	primitive	بدائى
discipline	انضباط	control	chaos	فوضى
encourage	يشجع	boost	discourage	يُوهن العزيمة/يُثَبِّط
fatherly	أبوى	affectionate	cruel	قاسٍ
honour	شرف/ تكريم	esteem	criticism	انتقاد
influence	تأثير	effect	cause	مسبب
introduction	مقدمة	initiation	conclusion	خاتمة
natural	طبيعى	normal	unnatural	غير طبيعى
respect	يحترم/احترام	value	disrespect	يحتقر/ازدراء
responsible	مسئول	reliable	irresponsible	غير مسئول
serious	جاد	tough	funny	مرح
silence	يسكت	mute	agitate	يثير
spoil	يفسد/ يدلل	favour	ignore	يتجاهل
strict	صارم/متشدد	tough	lenient	متساهل
success	نجاح	achievement	failure	فشل

Important Language Notes



- عند قراءة أو قول السنوات فإننا نقسمها إلى جزأين كالتالى:

2018	two thousand and eighteen/ twenty eighteen	2020	two thousand and twenty/ twenty twenty
1805	eighteen oh five	2007	two thousand and seven
1666	sixteen sixty-six	1898	eighteen ninety-eight
1998	nineteen ninety-eight	1266	twelve sixty-six



Nouns and Verbs

- بعض الكلمات تستخدم كاسم وفعل (بمعانى متشابهة) بنفس النطق والهجاء منها:

ache	ألم/يؤلم	chat	دردشة/يدردش	face	وجه/يواجه
break	راحة/يكسر	demand	طلب/يطلب	plan	خطة/يخطط

- I always **plan** my lessons well.
- He has a good **plan** for his lesson.
- My little sister has a beautiful **face**.
- Egypt **faces** a lot of economic problems nowadays.

The suffix (-nce)

- بعض الصفات تتحول إلى أسماء بإضافة اللاحقة (-nce) مثل:

confident	واثق	confidence	ثقة
different	مختلف	difference	اختلاف
important	مهم	importance	أهمية
influential	مؤثر/ذو نفوذ	influence	تأثير/نفوذ
intelligent	ذكى	intelligence	ذكاء

- يمكن استخدام لاحقات أخرى لتؤدى نفس العمل مثل (ness- ity)

serious	جاد	seriousness	جدية
strict	صارم	strictness	صرامة
responsible	مسئول	responsibility	مسئولية
possible	ممكن	possibility	إمكانية



Other Language Notes

event / incident / accident

event — حدث (هام وشيق وغالبًا يتم فيه اجتماع الناس)
- The signing of the peace treaty was a historic event.

incident — حدث عابر (أحداث القصص والأفلام والمباريات)
- There have been several violent incidents at football matches recently.

accident — حادث (شيء سيئ يحدث وغالبًا به ضرر أو إصابات)
- We were all shocked at the terrible train accident.

life

life — الحياة بشكل عام (لا تجمع)
- Many people believe that life is a race to be won.

a life — حياة من نوع خاص (يسبقها أداة نكرة).
- The operation enabled the wounded soldier to lead a normal life.

the life — حياة شخص أو فئة من الناس (يسبقها أداة معرفة).
- I read an exciting book about the life of William Shakespeare.

communicate / contact / connect

communicate (with) — يتواصل/يتفاهم
- Most companies communicate with each other using English.

contact — يتصل بـ
- You can always contact me on my home number.

connect — يصل/يربط بين شيئين
- Cairo metro connects many parts of Cairo together.

recommend / advise

recommend — ١- يرشح/يزكى
٢- يوصى بـ

- Can you recommend me a good restaurant?
- My teacher recommended me a book to read before doing the project.

advise — ينصح (بفعل شيء)
- I strongly advise you to apply for the job online.



decide

decide on + noun
- They decided on a name for the baby. يختار/يحدد/يستقر على

decide to + inf.
- He decided to stay and see what would happen. يقرر ان

decide that + (sentence جملة)
- I decided that it would be better to tell Hady everything. يقرر انه

sensible — sensitive

sensible متعقل/حساس (يعطى/يقدم الحكم السليم)
- Be sensible - you can't go out without a coat in this weather.

sensitive حساس (يفهم مشاعر الناس ومشكلاتهم)/مرهف/سهل التأثر
- It's made me much more sensitive to the needs of the disabled.

abroad — aboard — broad

abroad خارج البلاد
- The manager of the company often goes abroad on business.

aboard = on board على متن السفينة/الطائرة
- The check-in-desk announced that it's time to get aboard the plane to Saudi Arabia.

broad عريض/واسع
- My friend Ali is of medium height, but has very broad shoulders.

Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The African Cup of Nations was one of the major sporting .... of 2019 in Egypt.
   a) events b) incidents c) accidents d) accessories
2. The doctor .... swimming as the best exercise for me.
   a) decided b) advised c) invited d) recommended
3. Joining the university was the most .... decision that you made.
   a) attentive b) allergic c) sensitive d) sensible
4. We never travelled .... when we were kids.
   a) board b) abroad c) aboard d) broad

5. I tried to .... my friend at his office, but he wasn't in.
   a) connect b) communicate c) contact d) attach
6. The young man doesn't know what he really wants in ....
   a) life b) a life c) the life d) lives
7. People use more than words when they .... with each other.
   a) connect b) communicate c) contact d) attach
8. Youssef Shaheen is regarded as one of the most .... film directors of his generation.
   a) influence b) influencing c) influential d) influentially

Listening Text



Interviewer : Many people have grown up reading the books of Abdel-Tawab Youssef. In fact, I have just finished one of his books, called *My Father, an Egyptian Teacher*. With me today is Mrs Abdelaziz. She has written a book about why the writer became so successful. So, Mrs Abdelaziz, was Mr Youssef from Cairo?

Mrs Abdelaziz: No, he wasn't, although he lived a lot of his life there. Abdel-Tawab Youssef was born in 1928 in a small village near Beni Suef. When he was a child, he loved to read children's books and he also loved writing.

Interviewer : Did he go to university?

Mrs Abdelaziz: Yes, in 1945 he started studying political science[1] at Cairo University. He graduated in 1950 and then worked for the Egyptian Ministry[2] of Education, but six months later his father died.

Interviewer : That must have been a difficult time for him.

Mrs Abdelaziz: That's right. He wanted to live in Cairo with his mother and his three younger sisters. His uncles did not think this was a good idea, but he wanted to earn[3] enough money to send his sisters to school, which was unusual at that time.

(1) علم السياسة
(2) وزارة
(3) يكسب



Interviewer : When did he start writing children's books?

Mrs Abdelaziz: He didn't start for many years. Mr Youssef married Noaila Rashed in 1956 and they had three children. Mr Youssef set up the Children's Cultural[4] Association[5] in 1968 and he travelled to many countries to study children's culture, but he didn't start writing until 1975.

Interviewer : What happened then?

Mrs Abdelaziz: Well, in 1975, he started writing children's stories for radio and television. The stories were very successful and so he started to write novels, poems and plays[6], often about important events[7] and people in the world. He won many awards for his writing.

Interviewer : Are his books only famous in Egypt?

Mrs Abdelaziz: No. Since he became famous in Egypt, people have translated his books into many languages, including English, French and Chinese. Abdel-Tawab Youssef travelled a lot too. In 1985, he lectured[8] at the University of Ohio in the United States about writing for children and the importance[9] of Arabic literature. He died in 2015, aged 87.

Interviewer : His books have influenced[10] children for many years, and I'm sure children will continue to enjoy his books in the future. Thank you!

(4) ثقافى
(5) منظمة/مؤسسة
(6) مسرحيات
(7) أحداث
(8) حاضر
(9) أهمية
(10) يؤثر على



My Father, an Egyptian Teacher

For all those who have had the honour[1] of being called "teacher".





The head teacher realised that the young teacher was worried about his first lesson at the school.

"Don't worry, you have all the qualities to be a good teacher!" he said. "You are very natural with the students. You're serious[2] and responsible[3], warm but strict[4]. That is what I've learnt about you in the short time you've been here. You will need to discipline[5] the students, but you'll be fatherly[6] and gentle."

(1) شرف
(2) جاد
(3) مسئول
(4) صارم/حازم
(5) يهذب
(6) أبوى

"Do you think so? I've always prepared my lessons well," said the teacher. "I give myself goals and plan how to achieve them. I plan an introduction and then use steps. And I like to use paintings and pictures," said the teacher.

"That's good. You've come with fresh ideas," answered the head.

"I believe that a teacher mustn't silence[7] his students. He must inspire them and encourage them to communicate and to take part in conversations."

"You don't want to spoil[8] the students," warned the head.

"Oh, I won't. We should encourage them to move around the class. We can change the design of the classroom: if there's a discussion, the students can sit in a circle or semicircle[9]. We could even have the class outside, under the trees!" said the teacher. "Good luck with your first class tomorrow," said the head.

The head teacher left him dreaming about his new life as a teacher. He believed that his job was the most important job: he was society's engineer, helping to build it. A teacher is like the layers[10] of the earth: whatever level you reach, you can dig deeper to find more layers that are even richer than before. His was the best job in the world.

(7) يسكت
(8) يفسد/يدلل
(9) نصف دائرة
(10) طبقات

Notes on some sentences from (Listening & Reading) texts

1 When he was a child, he loved to read children's books.

- لاحظ استخدام جملتين فى زمن الماضى البسيط مع (when) للتعبير عن عادة فى الماضى.

2 People have translated his books into many languages, including English, French and Chinese.

- لاحظ استخدام (including) هنا كحرف جر بمعنى (بما فيه) ويمكن أن تكون اختصارًا للجملة (which include).

3 You're serious and responsible, warm but strict.

- لاحظ اختصار الجملة بعد (but) وكانت فى الأصل but you are strict.

4 That is what I've learnt about you in the short time you've been here.

- لاحظ استخدام الفعل (learn) بمعنى يعرف أو يدرك وليس يتعلم.

5 Whatever level you reach, you can dig deeper ....

- كلمة (Whatever) أداة ربط بمعنى (مهما) ويتبعها اسم + فاعل + فعل



Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There were a number of events to collect money for the cancer charity ....
   a) accommodation b) association c) invitation d) importation
2. The .... of Education is doing great efforts to improve schools and provide them with all possible facilities.
   a) Section b) Department c) Company d) Ministry
3. After the snowstorm, the road was covered by a thick .... of ice.
   a) liar b) layer c) step d) roof
4. Young people always receive .... advice, but most of them don't care about that.
   a) fatherly b) weekly c) yearly d) heavily
5. Cairo Book Fair is considered a great .... festival for Egyptian and Arab writers.
   a) agricultural b) industrial c) cultural d) cultured
6. Many Egyptian film directors are greatly .... by great directors such as Salah Abu Seif and Youssef Shaheen.
   a) influenced b) resulted c) effected d) reflected
7. This company's manager is very serious and .... with the employees, he allows no mistakes.
   a) gentle b) easy c) criminal d) strict
8. Dr Zewail had taught and .... at American Universities until he died a few years ago.
   a) lectured b) chatted c) informed d) told
9. It is a good idea for a teacher to .... his students in class, but he shouldn't be cruel.
   a) depress b) frighten c) discipline d) oppress
10. Newspapers and television are extremely .... in raising people's awareness of different social problems.
   a) affective b) enforcing c) eccentric d) influential
11. I think that a good teacher shouldn't .... the students all the time.
   a) silence b) sound c) encourage d) inspire
12. My parents always advise me to have more .... in my own abilities.
   a) fear b) confidence c) suspicion d) doubt
13. Scientists believe that a child's .... develops rapidly between the ages of four and five.
   a) intelligence b) infection c) defect d) fault
14. My grandparent used to live in a house which .... a park but unluckily the park was turned into a shopping centre.
   a) lost b) hid c) appeared d) faced

15 Most old people .... much care and attention because of their health problems.
a) acquire b) demand c) oppose d) advise

16 Mary is an only child, but her parents didn't really .... her. They wanted her to have good morals.
a) help b) rot c) damage d) spoil

17 It is said that you can avoid failure if you .... your study ahead.
a) train b) attain c) plan d) design

18 The young writer has won a number of .... for the books she published during the last few years.
a) presents b) awards c) medals d) races

19 A politician should study .... in order to be successful.
a) science fiction b) non-fiction c) political science d) medicine

20 The office clerk doesn't .... much money, but she enjoys her work in the company.
a) gain b) win c) beat d) earn

21 At nursery school we used to sit in a .... around the teacher listening to her.
a) square b) triangle c) semicircle d) rectangle

22 Our head teacher is a very .... man, he doesn't even smile.
a) dangerous b) gentle c) funny d) serious

23 I think it is a/an .... to represent your country in the Olympics.
a) disrespect b) honour c) trouble d) shame

24 Patience and hard work are two of the most important .... of a good teacher.
a) qualities b) certificates c) quantities d) beliefs

25 Ahmed is .... for taking care of his grandfather who is very old.
a) irresponsible b) desirable c) reusable d) responsible

26 Getting married is a great .... in anyone's life.
a) accident b) incident c) episode d) event

27 This TV set should be .... to the power supply.
a) contacted b) connected c) tied d) communicated

28 When my brother travelled abroad, I .... how much I like him.
a) informed b) educated c) recognised d) realised

29 I was shocked by the man's cruel .... towards his family.
a) effort b) appearance c) behaviour d) politeness

30 Mr. Maged .... all his students to do the best they can do.
a) argues b) discourages c) encourages d) impresses

31 Our teacher always has a .... way of dealing with problems in class.
a) sensitive b) sensible c) sense d) sensation

52. He was a little boy, but he .... as if he was an adult.
    a) slept b) cried c) behaved d) ran
53. My .... to leave school when I was only 15 was the worst mistake I ever made.
    a) destination b) ambition c) decision d) discussion
54. The teacher .... the students not to talk during the test.
    a) warned b) said c) suggested d) made
55. I hope this success will .... you to greater efforts.
    a) pull b) conspire c) aspire d) inspire
56. This company's products are organic as they use only .... ingredients.
    a) national b) natural c) foreign d) artificial
57. You will never .... very much if you do not work hard.
    a) make b) be c) achieve d) have
58. What do you want to be when you .... up?
    a) get b) draw c) grow d) turn
59. The company supplies building .... such as bricks and cement.
    a) ingredients b) materials c) metals d) tools
60. Most southern European countries have a .... climate: hot in summer and cold in winter.
    a) similar b) curious c) snowy d) different
61. .... is the study of ancient societies, done by looking at tools, bones and buildings.
    a) Biology b) Astronomy c) Psychology d) Archaeology
62. Mohamed is one of my oldest friends. I .... him completely.
    a) trust b) doubt c) suspect d) recognise
63. This website used to .... the results of the matches in a lot of tables.
    a) last b) enlist c) enroll d) list
64. We need a lot of .... and creative ideas to solve all world problems.
    a) fresh b) vague c) traditional d) customary
65. The famous singer is going on a/an .... in some European countries for a month.
    a) excavation b) shuttle c) expedition d) tour
66. Pollution .... have risen greatly in the last fifty years.
    a) accusations b) levels c) surfaces d) numbers
67. My son is working hard to achieve his .... of being a doctor.
    a) goal b) crime c) offence d) greed
68. The head teacher asked the new teacher to plan the .... of the lessons well.
    a) stairs b) steps c) ladders d) stops
69. You will understand this part of the book if you read the .... first.
    a) deduction b) production c) introduction d) protection

60 .... is a game for two players, who move their playing pieces across a special board.
a) Netball b) Badminton c) Chess d) FIFA

61 The Louvre Museum displays original .... by many famous artists such as Da Vinci's Mona Lisa.
a) statues b) paintings c) artefacts d) inventions

62 A new factory was .... up in our village to recycle animal waste to produce fertilisers.
a) set b) established c) demolished d) replaced

63 Dr Zewail's .... are known worldwide.
a) essays b) articles c) operations d) achievements

64 After running the marathon, the amateur runner's body .... for a week.
a) cured b) healed c) ached d) treated

Expressions, idioms, prepositions, derivatives, synonyms and antonyms *Exercises*

55 The company recognizes the .... of training its employees every now and then.
a) importance b) important c) import d) importation

56 The adjective "reliable" is similar in meaning to the adjective ....
a) lazy b) responsible c) untrusted d) void

57 All the students were .... turns reading the texts aloud.
a) making b) taking c) giving d) designing

58 Scientists are very worried .... the future of life on the earth.
a) for b) with c) about d) at

59 The doctors have been working all day without a .... because of the great number of the virus victims.
a) break b) bark c) brake d) breeze

60 Whose .... is it to make sure children arrive safely at school?
a) responsible b) responsibility c) response d) respond

61 The word "cruel" is an antonym to the word ....
a) fatherly b) tough c) violent d) harsh

62 The two friends usually have a .... over coffee during the break at the office.
a) speech b) chat c) lecture d) party

63 We were taught to .... respect for older people.
a) take b) get c) show d) lose

64 The word "esteem" is a synonym to the word ....
a) humiliation b) denial c) honour d) criticism

65 My grandfather had worked .... an engineering company for 30 years before he retired last year.
a) for b) of c) about d) as



66 There is no .... between the two cars. They look exactly the same.
a) differ b) different c) differentiate d) difference

67 I do a lot of swimming practice in order to .... fit.
a) play b) exert c) make d) keep

68 The noun "conclusion" can be the opposite to the word ....
a) essay b) precise c) chapter d) introduction

69 My cousin is ambitious and always dreams .... becoming a chef.
a) at b) for c) of d) on

Previous Exams Exercises

70 Yehia Haqqi is one of the most .... writers in the Egyptian literature. (ث ع ٢٠١٣)
a) innocent b) influential c) medical d) scientific

71 After working for 10 hours, I feel as if I have.................. nothing. (ث ع ٢٠١٤)
a) achieved b) launched c) succeeded d) acknowledged

72 It is important for teachers of English to .... students to speak English. (ث ع ٢٠١٥)
a) encourage b) blame c) admit d) mislead

73 I didn't .... that I had left my keys at home. (الأزهر ٢٠١٧)
a) release b) realise c) recognise d) understand

74 The director's instructions have .... the staff and improved their work. (ث ع ٢٠١٩)
a) charged b) given c) influenced d) associated

75 Being .... is one of the characteristics of a good teacher. (ث ع ٢٠١٩)
a) fatherly b) rapidly c) simply d) radically

Grammar

The Present Perfect Tense زمن المضارع التام

Form: التكوين	have/has + P.P. • They are happy. They've won the cup.
Negative: النفي	haven't/hasn't + P.P. • They haven't left the stadium yet.
Interrogative: الاستفهام	Have/Has + الفاعل + P.P.? • Has Karam lost his money? Wh-word + have/has + الفاعل + P.P.? • What have you done since the morning?



Usage
الاستخدام

1 **We often use the present perfect to talk about an action that started in the past and continues until the present, often with *for* (a time period) or *since* (a date or a starting point in the past).**

يعبر عن حدث بدأ في الماضي وما زال مستمرًا حتى الآن غالبًا مع for وبعدها المدة المحسوبة أو since وبعدها نقطة بداية الحدث في الماضي.

- Mona has studied English for ten years. (She is still studying.)
- We have been at this school since 2012. (We are still at the school.)

2 **For an action which has recently finished and whose result is visible in the present.**

يستخدم لحدث انتهى قريبًا ونتيجته واضحة في الحاضر.

- Hala cannot play tennis because she has hurt her hand.

3 **We also use the present perfect to talk about past experiences or events (without saying when), often with ever or never.**

نستخدم أيضًا المضارع التام للتحدث عن تجارب أو أحداث سابقة (دون ذكر متى)، غالبًا مع ever أو never.

- I have never eaten Chinese food.
- Have you ever ridden a camel?

4 **We also use the present perfect to talk about very recent events (often with just).**

كما نستخدم المضارع التام للتحدث عن الأحداث الحديثة التي لا نعتبرها ماضيًا (غالبًا مع just):

- Leila isn't here. She's just gone out.

5 **We also use the present perfect to talk about events that have not happened up to now (often with yet).**

كما نستخدم المضارع التام للتحدث عن الأحداث التي لم تحدث حتى الآن (غالبًا مع yet).

- I haven't received a reply to my email yet.

6 **For an action which happened at an unknown time in the past.**

يستخدم لحدث انتهى في وقت غير معروف في الماضي (التركيز يكون على الحدث ووقت الحدث ليس مهمًا).

- Omar has been to Paris four times. (لم نذكر متى حدث الفعل فالمهم هنا الحدث)



The present perfect is used with the following time expressions:

For, since, already, yet, just, ever, never, so far, up till now, lately, recently, how long ... over the years, etc.

Key Words		Examples
already	بالفعل	• I have already bought a lot of bread.
just	حالًا	• He has just come back from his holiday.
ever	من قبل	• Have you ever played hockey? • This is the most impressive film I've ever watched.
never	مطلقًا/أبدًا	• They have never eaten Chinese food.
yet	حتى الآن (النفي/السؤال)	• She hasn't finished cleaning the flat yet. • Has your course started yet?
so far/up till now	حتى الآن	• Salah has scored 2 goals in this match up till now.
lately, recently	حديثًا	• Have you bought any shirts lately/recently?
over	على مر (السنين)	• Egypt has changed over the last 8 years.
How long ....?	كم مدة/منذ متى...؟	• How long has he had that camera?
for (duration)	لمدة	• I haven't seen Mariam for 3 months.
since (starting point)	منذ (نقطة بداية)	• She hasn't visited us since last May.

For & Since

For
- a day/a month/a year
- weeks/months/years
- several days/weeks/years
- 2 hours
- ages
- a long time
- the last (period of time) week/year

Since
- + past simple (he left school).
- (Friday/Monday)
- (last June/April)
- (2000, 2015)
- appointed time (2 o'clock)
- + noun phrase (his childhood)
- last (week/year)
- then منذ ذلك الحين (بدل ماضٍ بسيط)

have been to/have gone to

have been to ذهب إلى مكان وعاد منه.

- He has been to Cairo.
- Ahmed, where have you been?

have gone to ذهب إلى مكان ولم يعد أو فى الطريق إلى هناك.

- They have gone to school.
- Where has Omar gone? I can't find him.

Check Point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. They .... in Luxor since 2015.
   a) had lived b) lived c) have lived d) are living
2. The plane .... I can see it in the sky!
   a) has just left b) has never left c) has ever left d) has left yet
3. My uncle has lived abroad .... five years.
   a) in b) for c) since d) during
4. I .... a break since this morning.
   a) haven't b) didn't have c) am not having d) haven't had
5. I don't need to wash my car. My brother .... it for me already.
   a) had washed b) is washing c) has washed d) washes

Extra Points

1. Subject + last + past simple + when + past simple

- I last caught fish when I was in Hurghada. (since)

- لتحويل الجمل التى بها last إلى since ننفى المضارع التام.

- I haven't caught fish since I was in Hurghada.

2. The last time + subj. + past simple + was + مدة + ago. (was in + سنة)

- The last time Ali played football was 10 years ago. (was in 2010) (since/fo
- Ali hasn't played football since 2010. (for 10 years)



3. **It's (It's been) + مدة + since + subj. + last + past simple**

(since/for)

- It's been 6 years since I last saw Rania.
- I haven't seen Rania since 2014. (for 6 years)

4. **"never" with comparative adjectives and "ever" with superlative ones.**

- نستخدم never مع صفات المقارنة و ever مع التفضيل.

- I've never bought a faster car than Peugeot.
- Peugeot is the fastest car I've ever bought.

5. **With expressions such as: This is the first time/It's the second time.**

- This is the first time Alaa has visited a European country.

6. **With words and expressions such as: today/this morning/evening/week/month, etc.**

- يستخدم مع الكلمات والتعبيرات السابقة إذا كانت هذه الفترات الزمنية مستمرة إلى لحظة الكلام.

- He has written three reports this morning. (هذا الصباح لم ينته فلربما يكتب تقارير أخرى)

7. **We often use the present perfect with already, and still to express surprise.**

- غالبًا ما نستخدم المضارع التام مع كلمات already و still للتعبير عن الدهشة.

- Our bus still hasn't arrived. It's too late.
- Have you finished writing the essay already? You are amazing.

8. **We use the present perfect with (after, when, as soon as, etc.) to refer to the future.**

- نستخدم المضارع التام مع الروابط الزمنية للإشارة للمستقبل.

- I'll leave the place when/after I've taken the money.

9. **The present perfect and the present perfect continuous.**

- قد يستخدم المضارع التام والتام المستمر لبيان حدث بدأ في الماضي وما زال مستمرًا. ولكن الأفعال الآتية لا تستخدم في الاستمرار فنستخدم معها المضارع التام فقط.

like, dislike, hate, enjoy, love, prefer, believe, think, notice, remember, understand, realise, seem, know, see, hear, feel, taste, look, smell, sound, be, contain, fit, include, belong, own, want, mean, appear, have, cost, owe, need, surprise

- He has owned this car for 5 years. He doesn't intend to sell it.
- I have had this camera since I got married. It's still in a good condition.

10. ***just + present perfect***

- I've just called the doctor.

just now + past simple

- He left just now.



The difference between present perfect and past simple

Present perfect	Past simple
Present perfect is used:	**Past simple is used:**
▸ for complete past actions connected to the present.	▸ for complete past actions not connected to the present.
يستخدم المضارع التام لحدث تم ولكن له علاقة بالمضارع.	يستخدم الماضى البسيط لحدث تم وليس له علاقة بالمضارع.
▸ He has gone to Aswan. (He's still there)	▸ He went to Aswan last year.
	نحدد متى حدث الفعل مع الماضى البسيط.
▸ Hany has written five reports this morning.	▸ Hany wrote five reports yesterday morning.
مازال الوقت فى الصباح وله علاقة بلحظة الكلام.	
▸ I've spoken to the Prime Minister. (a short time ago)	▸ I once spoke to professor Zewail.
	ليس للحدث علاقة بالمضارع لأن الدكتور زويل مات.
▸ He has lived in Cairo for two years. (He still lives in Cairo now.)	▸ He lived in Cairo for two years. (He doesn't live in Cairo now.)

A: Have you ever read any of Charles Dickens's stories?
B: Yes, we studied Oliver Twist last year.

Grammar Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Look what you .... How can we clean the floor now?
   a) will do b) has done c) have done d) had done
2. I've played football .... five years.
   a) since b) from c) ago d) for
3. We .... what to do for the holiday yet.
   a) haven't decided b) weren't deciding c) hadn't decided d) don't decide
4. Adel is really happy. He .... 10,000 pounds.
   a) have just won b) had just won c) has just won d) just won
5. There is something wrong with his car, so he .... it to the garage.
   a) has taken b) has been taken c) had taken d) is being taken
6. It's ages since we last .... some good news.
   a) have heard b) had heard c) heard d) were hearing
7. We .... enormous problems recently with ants in the kitchen. We just can't get rid of them.
   a) had b) have had c) are having d) were having

8 I have read more than 100 novels, but I .... plays or poems.
a) have read b) have never read c) have already read d) have ever read

9 We .... in Port Said for three years now and we like it a lot.
a) have lived b) lived c) am living d) live

10 It's one of the most magnificent views I ....
a) have never seen b) have ever seen c) had seen d) saw

11 Ibrahim .... four TV interviews about his new book.
a) had done b) has never done c) has already done d) is doing

12 I .... Omar for three years. We still meet once a month.
a) have known b) have been knowing c) know d) had known

13 I .... three cups of tea with all my family this morning.
a) have been drinking b) has drunk
c) drink d) have drunk

14 I .... Ahmed. I met him a moment ago.
a) have never met b) haven't met c) have just met d) will meet

15 **A:** What's the problem?
B: I .... my glasses and I can't read what is in this advertisement.
a) had broken b) have broken c) was breaking d) am breaking

16 His style of painting .... over the years.
a) have changed b) changing c) is changed d) has changed

17 How many times .... to you since he travelled abroad?
a) did he write b) does he write c) has he written d) is he writing

18 **A:** Would you like to borrow this book? **B:** No, thanks. I .... it.
a) have already read b) have never read c) just read d) am reading

19 I haven't been able to play tennis since I .... my arm.
a) break b) have broken c) had broken d) broke

20 I have only .... to Hong Kong once, but I'd love to go again.
a) been b) gone c) visited d) went

21 You can't see Tamer before Wednesday. He..... London for a few days on business.
a) had been in b) has been to c) has gone to d) was in

22 Radwa doesn't know what flying is like because she ....
a) has already flown b) has never flown c) has ever flown d) isn't flying

23 Since he became famous in Egypt, people .... his books into many languages.
a) translate b) had translated c) have translated d) are translating

24 It's two weeks since we last ....
a) had met b) meeting c) have met d) met

25 This is the most interesting book I have .... read.
a) just b) never c) ever d) since

26 Oh! I .... my passport. What should I do?
a) have lost b) lose c) had lost d) am losing

27 Tamer .... a lot of health problems since he started living in that polluted city.
a) is having b) has had c) had d) has

28 Adel hasn't contacted me since he .... Cairo.
a) had left b) has left c) left d) leaves

29 I have .... been to the zoo before.
a) never b) since c) just d) yet

30 Belal is not here. He has .... to the dentist's.
a) been b) gone c) reached d) visited

31 We haven't travelled by train .... years.
a) by b) since c) for d) last

32 I can't phone my parents because I .... my mobile phone.
a) lose b) had lost c) would lose d) have lost

33 Nawal's younger sister has studied the past tense, but she .... the present perfect yet.
a) has studied b) hasn't studied c) studied d) doesn't study

34 Basel is not hungry because he .... a big lunch.
a) has eaten b) eats c) had eaten d) is eating

35 We can't go home by bus because the last bus ....
a) leaves b) hasn't left c) has just left d) left

36 Hamid's hair is wet because he .... a shower.
a) has just had b) has never had c) has ever had d) isn't having

37 We'll make a move as soon as the train ....
a) stopping b) has stopped c) had stopped d) stopped

38 Doaa .... at the nearby school for three years when she was young.
a) works b) is working c) has worked d) worked

39 My uncle .... for London to do some business just now.
a) was leaving b) has left c) left d) had left

40 I .... a vegetarian; I've never eaten meat.
a) had always been b) have always been
c) was never been d) was always being

41 Mr Yang .... hospital for three weeks now because of corona diseases.
a) has gone to b) was c) has been to d) has been in

42 Since his mother .... ill, he will clean the flat for her.
a) is b) was c) was being d) had been

43 Have you finished ....? It's too early.
a) just b) yet c) already d) up till now

44 A: Why are you late? B: Sorry. I .... for my glasses.
a) have looked b) have been looking
c) looked d) had looked

45 The manager .... ten applicants for the new job so far.
a) interviews b) has interviewed
c) had interviewed d) was interviewed

Previous Exams Exercises

46 Oh! I .... my mobile. What can I do? (ث.ع دور أول ٢٠١٩)
a) was breaking b) have broken c) broke d) had broken

47 Nothing like this .... to her. (ث.ع دور ثان ٢٠١٩)
a) has happened b) has never happened
c) has ever happened d) happened

48 It's a month .... Hend last visited her uncle. (ث.ع ٢٠١١)
a) for b) since c) of d) to

49 It's more than 40 years .... I travelled abroad. (ث.ع ٢٠١٤)
a) while b) when c) before d) since

50 .... I started my job, I've met important people from all over the world. (ث.ع ٢٠١٠)
a) For b) Since c) Until d) When

Language Functions

Asking for and giving advice: طلب وإعطاء النصيحة:

Asking for Advice	Giving Advice
• What advice can you give me? • What do you think I should do? • Can you give me any advice? • Can you advise me about ...?	• I think you should + inf. ... • Why don't you + inf. ...? • If I were you, I'd + inf. ... • What about + v-ing + inf. ...? • I think it'd be a good idea to + inf. ... • You could + inf. ... • The best thing you could do would be to + inf. ... • I advise you to + inf. ...

Skills Exercises

1 Read the following passage then answer the questions:

The human body is like a machine that is moving and working all the time. All machines need fuel to give them energy. The fuel for the human body is food and most of the energy comes from two substances in our food, they are carbohydrates and fats. Carbohydrates are found in food like potatoes, bread, rice, wheat, corn, and sugar. Fats come from food like cheese, butter, oil and meat.

Energy in food is measured in calories. For example, an apple has about 40 calories, and egg has about 80, a fresh date has 15, and a tomato has around 12. Carbohydrates and fats have a lot of calories. For instance, a tin of soft drink, which contains a lot of sugar, has 145, a piece of Arab bread has 165, and only one spoonful of cooking oil has 120 calories.

You need about 40 calories a day for each kilo that you weigh. So, if you weigh 60 kilos, you will need about 2400 calories per day. If a person eats more calories than he needs, his body stores the extra calories as fat. A person who gets all the calories he needs in his meals but in addition drinks only one tin of soft drink a day may gain five kilos per year.

Unfortunately, food which contains carbohydrates is usually cheaper than other food and it is often convenient and attractive, All 'junk food' contains lots of carbohydrates and fats. If your diet contains a lot of junk food, you will probably get fat.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Which statement is true?

a) Food which contains carbohydrates is the only food useful for the body.
b) Food which contains carbohydrates isn't expensive and is most liked.
c) Food which contains carbohydrates has less calories.
d) Food which contains carbohydrates doesn't make us fat.

2. How many calories does the person who weighs 50 kilos need a day?

a) 2400 calories. b) 60 calories.
c) 40 calories. d) 2000 calories.

3. How many calories do tins of soft drink have?

a) A few. b) A small number of.
c) No. d) Many.

4. What do potatoes, bread, rice, wheat, corn, and sugar contain?

a) Fats. b) Salts. c) Carbohydrates. d) Vitamins.





B) Answer the following questions:

5. Where does energy for the human body come from? Mention two sources.
6. Where can we find fats? Give two examples at least.
7. Illustrate why junk food is not healthy. Mention two points.
8. When, do you think, the person becomes fat? Mention two points.

2 Write an essay of about (180) words on one of the following:

"The most important qualities of a good teacher."

3 Translation:

A) Translate into Arabic:

1. Mr. Abdel Tawab Youssef insisted that his three sisters had a good education. That's because he was one of the great advocators of education and culture.
2. Publishing more children's stories could encourage our children to read. Reading is one of the best ways to make use of their spare time.
3. Using modern technology and new strategies are ways of a good teacher. Therefore, the Ministry of Education makes sure of using new technology in the new system.
4. A teacher is the force that drives the educational system by interacting with students and dealing with the parents. Therefore, developing education starts with developing the teacher.
5. Being a good citizen requires a lot of civilized behaviour like helping the people in need. This is also one of the great social values, which should be reinforced by all sectors. (الثانوية عامة (معدلة) ٢٠١٢)
6. Co-operation among nations of the world will result in spreading peace and security. The United Nations organisations are a great media with which the world can encourage it. (السودان (معدلة) ٢٠١١)

B) Translate into English:

١- اختلف دور المعلم فى الطرق الحديثة من مجرد مصدر للمعلومات إلى وسيلة للوصول إليها. فالإنترنت والوسائل التكنولوجية الحديثة أصبحت مصدرًا هامًا ومتطورًا للحصول على المعرفة والمعلومات.

٢- قراءة القصص تساعد الأطفال على قضاء وقت الفراغ بطريقة مفيدة، كما أنها أيضًا من أهم الوسائل التعليمية التى تساعد المعلمين على عرض المنهج بطريقة ممتعة.

٣- كثرة المال لا توفر بالضرورة حلولاً لكل المشاكلات التى يواجهها المجتمع، ولكن الأفضل من ذلك حسن استغلال الموارد وعدم هدرها من جانب جميع أفراد المجتمع. (الثانوية عامة (معدلة) ٢٠١٣)

٤- يجب أن ننشئ الأطفال على حب الوطن واحترام الوالدين؛ لأن ذلك يحميهم من الوقوع فريسة لجماعات التطرف والإرهاب التى تستغل الشباب فى أعمالهم الإجرامية. (السودان (معدلة) ٢٠١١)

Enrich your Vocabulary

advocator	مؤيد / مدافع عن	nation	أمة
bring up	ينشئ	necessarily	بالضرورة
citizen	مواطن	peace	السلام
civilised	متحضر	provide	توفر
co-operation	التعاون	require	يتطلب
deal with	يتعامل مع	sector	قطاع
educational	تعليمى	security	الأمن
force	قوة	source	مصدر
interact	يتفاعل	strategies	استراتيجيات
media	وسيط / وسط	syllabus	المنهج



Open General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Egypt joined the International Football .... (i.e. FIFA) in 1925.
   a) Party
   b) Organisation
   c) Association
   d) Institution
2. The club manager hasn't .... the new team manager yet.
   a) listed
   b) named
   c) mentioned
   d) memorised
3. The manager's messages are not being .... effectively to staff and workers.
   a) linked
   b) connected
   c) contacted
   d) communicated
4. Fortunately, the damage to the car was not ....
   a) serious
   b) aggressive
   c) acute
   d) violent
5. Since the police ...., she has changed her statement.
   a) meeting
   b) trust
   c) interview
   d) seminar
6. I came home late and got a .... from my parents for this.
   a) chat
   b) conversation
   c) report
   d) lecture
7. The former minister has decided to break his .... about the trial to prove that he is not guilty.
   a) silence
   b) research
   c) debate
   d) act
8. The man is not a volunteer in the .... sense of the word because he receives some money every now and then.
   a) cruel
   b) strict
   c) lenient
   d) serious
9. The news .... hope that the war might end soon.
   a) accepted
   b) aspired
   c) inspired
   d) intended

10 Unluckily, many orphans have to work hard to .... their keep.

a) win
b) award
c) apply
d) earn

11 The room was filled .... smoke.

a) in
b) with
c) for
d) by

12 I've never heard such a beautiful singing voice .... hers.

a) than
b) to
c) as
d) rather than

13 Yasser .... in the KSA since 1996.

a) lives
b) lived
c) is living
d) has been living

14 Doaa .... me she would come to hockey practice today.

a) said
b) told to
c) told
d) asked

15 I'd prefer to visit Ahmed .... spend the evening inside watching TV.

a) from
b) rather than
c) to
d) rather

16 Omar wants to learn how to play .... guitar.

a) a
b) an
c) the
d) no article

17 Two hours .... a long time to wait if you aren't in a hurry.

a) isn't
b) hasn't
c) aren't
d) haven't

18 I .... come to the cinema yesterday because I had so much homework to do.

a) mustn't
b) couldn't
c) shouldn't
d) may not

19 Ali read an interesting .... of news in the paper.

a) piece
b) packet
c) slice
d) block

20 I'd rather he .... me to my face rather than behind my back.

a) criticised
b) has criticised
c) criticising
d) criticise

Test 2 Based on Unit 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Without good .... in schools, the standard of teaching suffers.
   a) suffering b) persuasion c) punishment d) discipline
2. A: Have you heard Amr's new album? B: Yes, I .... it yesterday.
   a) have bought b) had bought c) can buy d) bought
3. Alaa .... action film since childhood. He watches every new one.
   a) always enjoys b) has always enjoyed
   c) always enjoyed d) is always enjoying
4. Young people are more .... for protecting their country than older people.
   a) impressive b) representative c) irresponsible d) responsible
5. It's the first time I .... to write such long homework.
   a) had b) have ever had c) have d) had ever had
6. That's the sixth cup of coffee you .... today.
   a) have had b) had c) were having d) had had
7. The players were given .... instructions not to leave the hotel before the match.
   a) cruel b) flexible c) strict d) easy
8. The number of women who have ever used the internet .... by more than 60% since 1995.
   a) will increase b) had increased c) has increased d) increased
9. I highly recommend this book. It has really .... my thinking about social problems.
   a) damaged b) influenced c) effected d) uprooted
10. How .... over the past ten years?
    a) did your life change b) had your life changed
    c) was your life changed d) has your life changed
11. Since he became a pilot, my brother .... 30 flights to different destinations.
    a) made b) has made c) had made d) used to make
12. If something is worthwhile, you ....
    a) find it meaningless b) can't benefit from it
    c) can understand it easily d) gain something from it
13. Rameses II .... over ancient Egypt for more than fifty years.
    a) was ruling b) had ruled c) have ruled d) ruled
14. Two firefighters have been honoured for their courage. The antonym of "honoured" is ....
    a) insulted b) respected c) injured d) saved



15 Detective novels are .... he enjoys reading.
a) where b) which c) who d) what

16 I can't stand people .... rubbish in the street.
a) to throw b) throwing c) throws d) throw

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Schools are not only places for learning different subjects, but also for acquiring good manners and correct behaviour. In my view, a modern school should consist of healthy and well-ventilated rooms. In the classroom, the number of learners should not exceed thirty pupils. This gives teachers better chances to have direct relationships with their students. Teachers should be aware of their students' problems and try to solve them. They should act not only as teachers but also as friends and guides as well.

A modern school should have a big library full of up-to-date books, dictionaries, magazines and newspapers. Certain hours should be devoted to free reading. Students should be encouraged to read about different subjects and to discuss them with their classmates and teachers. In a modem school, there should be a spacious playground and a gymnasium for practising sports. Games and sports should be well cared for. All of us know that a sound mind is in a sound body. Moreover, Sports teach students the merits of cooperation, self-confidence, unselfishness and love. On the other hand, modern schools should be equipped with computers to keep pace with modern technology. All pupils should master the skills of using computers.

A modern school should have all possible facilities, which make the school day useful and enjoyable at all times. Social activities such as contests, competitions, lectures, visits to historic places, excursions, etc. should be available through the school year. Teachers should consider the mentality of their pupils and develop it. The materials taught to them should cope with their age and minds. Corporal punishment should not be used in modern schools as it damages the personality of the young students. Schools should not close its gates in summer. Youngsters should be given the opportunity to know each other better. They should practice their favourite hobbies in a quiet atmosphere away from books and examinations.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What should we acquire from schools apart from learning different subjects?

a) We should acquire good manners and correct behaviour.
b) We should acquire how to invade space.
c) We should acquire means of getting jobs.
d) We should acquire means to get money.

2. How many learners should the classroom have?

a) The number of students should be enough to the space.
b) The number of students should not exceed thirty pupils.
c) The number of students should not be fewer than thirty pupils.
d) The number of students should be more than thirty pupils.

3. How should the materials taught to students be?

a) They should cope with the students' ages and minds.
b) They should be advanced and of a high level.
c) They should be easy to be taught quickly.
d) They should be imported from other countries.

4. What does the underlined word "spacious" mean?

a) Equipped.
b) Full of balls.
c) Large and airy.
d) Made of concrete.

B) Answer the following questions:

5. What kind of rooms should a modern school consist of? Mention two.
6. What should a big library in a modern school have? Two things at least.
7. How, do you think, the number of students affect the relationship between the learner and the teacher? Mention two points.
8. In your opinion, how can we make schools be attractive for students?

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

One of the most important aims of education is to build up an Egyptian citizen who is able to create a productive society. It also aims at preparing a generation of scientists serving humanity.

B) Translate into English:

- يجب أن يُكرَّم الكتاب والعلماء المتميزون فى المجتمع بمنحهم الجوائز والأوسمة وإظهارهم فى وسائل الإعلام حتى يكونوا قدوة صالحة للأطفال والشباب.

4 Write an email to a friend of (180) words on the following:

Giving your friend advice about buying a new laptop and how he can choose the best one. Your name is Essam. Your friend's name is Fouad. His address is fouad@newmail.com.



Unit 3 Women in history

Objectives

Listening	:	Listening for gist and to interpret information
Grammar	:	Relative clauses
Reading	:	Reading for specific information and to interpret reference words
Critical thinking	:	Understanding the changing role of women in society
Functions	:	Expressing enthusiasm
Writing	:	Writing an email about free-time activities





Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

appreciate (v) (d)	يُقدّر	licence (n)	رخصة
argue (v) (d)	يجادل	nursing (n)	تمريض
award (v) (ed)	يمنح (جائزة/درجة جامعية)	positive (adj)	إيجابي
career (n)	حياة مهنية	respected (adj)	محترم
director (n)	مدير	role (n)	دور
government (n)	حكومة	solo (adj)	منفردٌ
impressive (adj)	مؤثر	suitable (adj)	مناسب
(be) in charge of	مسئول عن		

Vocabulary on Listening

article (n)	مقال	inspector (n)	مفتش
degree (n)	درجة	join (v) (ed)	يلتحق بـ
employ (v) (ed)	يوظف	literature (n)	أدب
encourage (v) (d)	يشجع	meetings (n)	لقاءات/اجتماعات
personal (adj)	شخصى	research assistant (n)	باحث/معيد (فى الجامعة)
poem (n)	قصيدة	society (n)	مجتمع
position (n)	موقع/مكانة	staff (n)	هيئة العاملين/طاقم العمل
improve (v) (d)	يحسن/يتحسن	take up (v)	يستغرق/يشغل وقتا



Vocabulary on Reading

abroad (adv)	خارج البلاد
acceptable (adj)	مقبول
achievement (n)	إنجاز
daughter (n)	ابنة
document (n)	وثيقة/مستند
effective (adj)	مؤثر/فعال
famous (adj)	مشهور
official (adj)	رسمى
pilot (n)	طيار
soldier (n)	جندى
stop (v) (ped)	يتوقف/يوقف
wealthy (adj)	ثرى
wounded (adj)	مجروح/مصاب

Critical Thinking, Communication & Workbook Vocabulary

ability (n)	قدرة
admire (v) (d)	يعجب بـ
apologise (v) (d)	يعتذر
(be) shipwrecked	مهجور بعد تحطم سفينة
brilliant (adj)	رائع/ ممتاز
brochure (n)	منشور دعائى
clap (v) (ped)	يصفق
cleanliness (n)	النظافة
community (n)	مجتمع/جماعة
control (v) (led) (n)	يتحكم في/تحكم
cure (n) (v) (d)	علاج/ يعالج
determined (adj)	مصمم/عاقد العزم
effect (n)	تأثير
fitness (n)	لياقة
free-time (n)	وقت الفراغ
hygiene (n)	النظافة الشخصية
illness (n)	مرض
leaflet (n)	كتيب
outdoor (adj)	خارج البيت
permission (n)	إذن/تصريح
popular (adj)	مشهور/محبوب
present (v) (ed)	يقدم
qualification (n)	مؤهل
race (n)	سباق
respond (v) (ed)	يستجيب/يقوم برد فعل
result (n)	نتيجة
similar (adj)	مشابه
skill (n)	مهارة
state (n)	دولة/ولاية
technology (n)	تكنولوجيا
terrific (adj)	رائع/ممتاز
train (v) (ed)	يدرب/يتدرب
trip (n)	رحلة
value (n)	قيمة
voyage (n)	رحلة بحرية





Focus on Vocabulary

Word	Definition
appreciate يُقدِّر	understand and enjoy the good qualities of something
argue for يدافع عن	clearly explain why something is true or must be done
award يمنح (جائزة/درجة جامعية)	officially give someone a prize or money
(be) in charge of مسئول عن	be the person who is responsible for something or someone
career حياة مهنية	a job or profession you have trained for and intend to do for a long time
director مدير	someone who controls or manages a company, organisation or activity
government حكومة	the group of people who make decisions about how to rule a country
impressive مؤثر/مبهر	making you admire something
licence رخصة	an official document that allows you to do something
nursing التمريض	the job of looking after people who are ill or injured
positive إيجابي	hopeful and confident
respected محترم	admired by many people because of your achievements, skills, etc.
role دور	the position that someone has in a job or activity
solo منفرد/عمل منفرد	done alone, without anyone else helping you
suitable مناسب	right or acceptable for a particular situation

Expressions & Idioms

Expression	Meaning	Expression	Meaning
across the Arab world	عبر العالم العربى	have a role in	لديه دور فى
at the age of	فى سن ...	have an effect on	له تأثير على
at a time	فى وقت ما	in detail	بالتفصيل
(be) awarded a degree	يُمنح درجة علمية	introduce new ideas	يقدم أفكارًا جيدة
(be) known as	معروف كـ ...	join the university staff	يلتحق بهيئة الجامعة
born into a wealthy family	وُلِد فى أسرة ثرية	mark an event	يميز حدث
give permission	يعطى إذنًا (تصريحًا)	on your own	بمفردك
have a degree in	لديه درجة علمية فى	take up much of her personal life	تشغل جزءًا كبيرًا من حياتها الشخصية

Phrases & Prepositions

Phrase	Meaning	Phrase	Meaning
appreciative of	مقدر لـ ...	popular with	محبوب من
cure for	علاج لـ ...	return to	يعود إلى
effect on	تأثير على	successful at	ناجح فى
find out	يكتشف	suitable for	مناسب لـ/صالح لـ
look after	يعتنى بـ ...	value of	قيمة الـ ...

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
admire	يعجب بـ	admiration admirer	إعجاب معجب	admirable	مثير للإعجاب
affect	يؤثر على	effectiveness	فعالية/تأثير	effective	مؤثر/فعال
appreciate	يُقَدِّر	appreciation	تقدير	appreciative	مقدر/ممتن
argue	يجادل	argument	نقاش حاد/جدال	argumentative	جدلى
determine	يصمم/يعقد العزم	determination	عزيمة/إصرار	determined	مصمم/عاقد العزم



direct	يدير/يرشد	direction director	إرشاد/ توجيه مدير	------------------------------	
encourage	يشجع	encouragement	تشجيع	encouraging	مشجع/تشجيع
govern	يحكم	government	حكومة	governing	حاكم
impress	يؤثر فى	impression	تأثير/انطباع	impressive	مؤثر
inspect	يفتش	inspection inspector	تفتيش مفتش	Inspectable	قابل للفحص
permit	يصرح/تصريح	permission	إذن/تصريح	permitted	مسموح
------------------------------		personality	شخصية	personal	شخصى
respect	يحترم	respect	احترام	respected respectful respectable	محترم (بسبب أفعاله) محترم (يتعامل باحترام) جدير بالاحترام
suit	يلائم	suitability	مناسبة/ ملائمة	suitable	مناسب

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
achievement	إنجاز	accomplishment	failure	الفشل
appreciate	يقدر	acknowledge	disvalue	يقلل من قيمة
argue	يجادل	debate	agree	يتفق
award	يمنح جائزة	assign	refuse	يرفض
director	مدير	administrator/manager	employee	موظف
impressive	مؤثر	remarkable	common/ordinary	شائع/عادى
personal	شخصى	private	public	عام
positive	إيجابى	constructive	negative	سلى
solo	منفرد	alone	cooperative	تعاونى
suitable	مناسب	convenient	inconvenient/unsuitable	غير كافٍ/غير مناسب



Important Language Notes

Expressions with "get"

- يستخدم الفعل (get) بمعان مختلفة في اللغة الإنجليزية منها:

get	يستلم/يتلقى	- She got loads of presents.
get	يشترى	- I usually get vegetables from the supermarket.
get	يصل	- We didn't get home until midnight. - We got to Paris that evening.
get	يصبح	- Eat your dinner before it gets cold.
get	يحصل على	- His father managed to get him a job at the local factory.
get	يحضر	- She's just left to get the kids from school.
get	يصاب بمرض	- I got a flu last winter and was in bed for three weeks.
get	يحقق/ينجز	- I got 98% in my last maths test.
get	يتحرك	- We managed to get past the guards.
get	يجعل/يقنع	- In the end, we got the children to clean the room.
get	يرد على (تليفون)	- Can you get the phone?




Nouns & Verbs

- بعض الكلمات تستخدم كاسم وفعل بمعان وطريقة نطق قريبة مع اختلاف في الهجاء مثل:



advice	نصيحة	advise	ينصح
licence	رخصة	license	يرخص
practice	ممارسة/تدريب	practise	يمارس/يتدرب
device	جهاز	devise	يبتكر



Other Language Notes

inspector — investigator — conductor

inspector — مفتش/مراقب (شخص وظيفته التأكد من أن الناس يؤدون أعمالهم بطريقة صحيحة)
- School inspectors reported last year that 20% of young pupils were unable to read or write.

investigator — محقق/مفتش (شخص وظيفته اكتشاف الحقائق رسميًا خاصة الجرائم والحوادث)
- A team of special investigators have gone to the scene of the explosion.

conductor — مفتش القطار أو الأتوبيس (كمسارى)
- As the train pulled out, the senior conductor came round.

permission — permit — licence

permission (uncountable) — تصريح (موافقة/رضا)
- Osama drove his father's car without his permission.

permit (countable) — تصريح رسمى مكتوب
(a building permit تصريح بناء – a residence permit تصريح إقامة)
- People from other countries require work permits.

licence (a driving licence) — رخصة (تصريح مكتوب رسمى، وخاصة للقيادة)
- You can't get a driving licence till you're 17.

affecting — impressive — effective

affecting = producing strong emotions of sadness, pity, etc. — مؤثر (يوحى بالشجن)
- *Oliver Twist* is a deeply affecting story.

impressive = something that is impressive makes you admire it because it is very good, large, important, etc. — مؤثر (يوحى بالإعجاب)
- Seeing the Pyramids for the first time was really impressive.

effective = successful, and working in the way that was intended — مؤثر (فعال ومفيد)
- Antibiotics are only effective if you finish the whole course of treatment.

appreciate — estimate

appreciate — يقدر (يعجب بـ)/يقيم
- We really appreciate your help in our project.

estimate — يقيم (يخمن قيمة شىء)
- The engineers estimated that the new project will cost about 4 million dollars.

Adverbs + a sentence

interestingly بشكل مثير للاهتمام - **undoubtedly** يقينًا/بلا شك

unfortunately لسوء الحظ - **personally** شخصيًا

هذه الظروف يمكن أن نبدأ بها الجملة وتأتى بعدها جملة كاملة.

- Interestingly, none of their three sons ever married.
- Undoubtedly, public interest in folk music has declined.
- Personally, I don't think ebooks will replace ordinary ones.

argue for / argue against / argue with

argue for يناضل من أجل/يؤيد
- Dr Aisha argued for women's rights.

argue against يناضل ضد/يعارض
- He argued powerfully against capital punishment.

argue with يجادل مع شخص (فى الرأى)
- Don't argue with me. Just do what I tell you.

spend

spend ينفق (مالًا) على
- Kenzy spends most of her money on clothes as she likes to dress fashionably.

spend يقضى الوقت فى شىء أو أداء شىء
- Dr Aisha spent most of her life on her work.
- Dr Aisha spent holidays visiting European museums, universities and libraries.

لاحظ أنه يأتى (verb + ing) بعد spend.

society / community

society المجتمع (عموم الناس الذين يربطهم قانون واحد وتنظيمات واحدة)
- Society has to be prepared to support its elderly people.

community المجتمع/الجالية/جماعة (الناس الذين يعيشون فى منطقة أو مدينة واحدة)
- Small rural communities depend mainly on agriculture.

Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A team of health .... visited many hospitals in the city last week.
   a) conductors b) investigators
   c) inspectors d) detectives
2. Parents have to give their .... for their children to go on school trips.
   a) permission b) permit c) licence d) degree
3. Many farmers are arguing .... building a new factory near their fields because it will harm their crops.
   a) for b) against c) with d) at
4. Seeing the old man sleeping on the pavement was really an .... sight that made us all sad.
   a) affecting b) impressive c) effective d) defective
5. New York City has a large Chinese .... living there.
   a) society b) army c) commercial d) community
6. We really .... all the help mother and father give us.
   a) appreciate b) estimate c) calculate d) count
7. Some teachers of English .... language games that they can play with students in class.
   a) device b) devise c) advice d) advise
8. ...., there's nothing I can do about your problem.
   a) Fortunate b) Fortunately c) Unfortunate d) Unfortunately

Listening Text

Dr Aisha Abd El-Rahman, who is known to some people as Bint El-Shatei, is one of the most famous people in Egyptian and Arab culture. As well as writing books on society and culture, she also wrote poems and for fifty years wrote for the newspaper Al-Ahram. During her life, she helped to improve women's position in Egyptian society.





Dr Aisha was born in 1913. Her father was an important man and Dr Aisha used to go with him to meetings[1] at which she learned to read and write. At a time when many girls didn't go to school, Aisha's mother encouraged[2] her daughter to get a good education and, as a result, Aisha started school at the age of five.

Dr Aisha was successful at school and went to Cairo University, where she studied Arabic language and literature. She was awarded her degree[3] in 1939 and then joined the university staff[4] as a research assistant. In 1942, she was employed as a government inspector[5] for the teaching of Arabic Literature.

Using the name Bint El-Shatei, Dr Aisha wrote many books and articles in which she argued for[6] a more positive[7] role[8] for women in the modern world.

Dr Aisha was a respected teacher and taught at many universities across the Arab world. With her husband, Professor Amin El-Kholy, Dr Aisha spent holidays visiting European museums, universities and libraries.

Dr Aisha died in 1998 at the age of eighty-five. Her work, which had taken up[9] much of her personal life, is still appreciated[10] today.

(1) لقاءات/اجتماعات
(2) يشجع
(3) درجة
(4) طاقم عمل
(5) مفتش
(6) يدافع عن
(7) إيجابى
(8) دور
(9) يشغل/يستغرق
(10) يقدر

Reading Text

Florence Nightingale



Florence Nightingale was born in 1820 into a wealthy family in Italy, but grew up and went to school in England. When she was 17, she decided that she wanted to be a nurse, although her family did not think that this was a suitable[1] job for their young daughter. However, Florence's work in a London hospital was so effective that the British government asked her to be in charge of[2] the nursing[3] of wounded[4] soldiers abroad. After working in Europe, she returned to England and opened the Nightingale School of Nursing in London, the first school of this kind.

(1) مناسب
(2) مسئول عن
(3) التمريض
(4) مجروح



Lotfia El Nadi



(5) رخصة
(6) منفردًا
(7) حياة مهنية
(8) مدير

In 1932, Lotfia El Nadi was the first and only woman to join a new school for pilots at Almaza airport. Her parents did not want her to be a pilot, so El Nadi worked as a secretary at the airport to pay for her lessons. When she was only 26, El Nadi became the first woman in Egypt to have a pilot's licence(5). In December 1933, she became famous when she flew solo(6) in an international race, which went from Cairo to Alexandria. She was only the second woman ever to fly like this. El Nadi, who had to stop flying after an accident, died in 2002 aged 94. However, her achievements encouraged other women to have a career(7) in flying. For example, in 1944, Linda Masoud became the first woman teacher at the flying school and Aziza Moharam later became a director(8) there.

Notes on some sentences from (Listening & Reading) texts

1 During her life, she helped to improve women's position in Egyptian society.

- بعد during نستخدم الاسم ولا نستخدم الفعل (v+ing) gerund

2 Aisha's mother encouraged her daughter to get a good education.

- بعد encourage نستخدم .to + inf
- إذا اســتخدمنا صفة قبل كلمة education فإننا نســتخدم أداة النكرة a/an قبل الصفة ويصبح المعنى تعليم كذا ...... وإذا لم تأت صفة يكون معنى education هو التعليم وهى كلمة معنوية لا تأخذ the

3 Using the name Bint El-Shatei, Dr Aisha wrote many books and articles in which she argued for a more positive role for women in the modern world.

- استخدام in قبل which لأن which تعود على articles and books والتى يأتى قبلها حرف الجر .in وكلمة women جمع عام لا يسبقها the

4 Florence Nightingale was born in 1820 into a wealthy family in Italy, but grew up and went to school in England.

- تستخدم into .... was born بمعنى يولد فى عائلة وكلمة grow up بمعنى يكبر أو ينمو ولكن grow بمفردها بمعنى يزرع .

5 The British government asked her to be in charge of the nursing of wounded soldiers abroad.

- كلمة nursing school بمعنى مدرسة التمريض أما كلمة nursery school بمعنى الحضانة أو رياض الأطفال.
- كلمة wounded صفة بمعنى مجروح وهى تصريف ثالث من الفعل wound بمعنى يجرح .



Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The students who complete the course successfully will be .... a diploma.
   a) awarded b) rewarded c) presented d) qualified
2. Mohamed Salah has been a .... role-model for many young men all over the world.
   a) passive b) negative c) positive d) persuasive
3. Women have now taken on many .... that were traditionally for men.
   a) roles b) rules c) rollers d) rails
4. The secretary feels that her work isn't fully .... by her manager so she is frustrated.
   a) estimated b) appreciated c) neglected d) ignored
5. All countries need a strong .... to lead the country during economic problems.
   a) environment b) development c) evolvement d) government
6. The singer decided to go .... after being with the band for 10 years.
   a) lonely b) alone c) isolated d) solo
7. The advertisement says the applicants must hold a valid driving ....
   a) licence b) qualification c) degree d) report
8. During his long .... in football, Hossam Hassan won many prizes and honours.
   a) occupation b) career c) job d) profession
9. There is a very strong .... for taking action against the build-up of greenhouse gases.
   a) regret b) achievement c) argument d) permission
10. Adel Emam is one of the most .... actors in Egyptian and Arab comedy.
    a) outdated b) intended c) inspected d) respected
11. They left their baby sitter in .... of the children when they went to the cinema.
    a) change b) charge c) recharge d) charged
12. My aunt has been employed in .... for several years now and she has a long experience in hospitals.
    a) nursing b) finance c) nursery d) security
13. Doctors are always trying to find .... new treatments for diseases.
    a) defective b) incurable c) effective d) treatable
14. She left school at 16, with no academic ....
    a) contract b) permission c) licence d) qualifications
15. Unfortunately, the new building is not really .... for wheelchair users.
    a) durable b) available c) forcible d) suitable
16. The main hospital in the city has a .... of around 150 people.
    a) stiff b) staff c) stuff d) crew
17. Road accidents are the .... of driving too fast and carelessness.
    a) result b) reason c) cause d) conclusion



18. The .... criticised the methods of teaching children in primary schools.
   a) conductors   b) policemen   c) check-in clerks   d) inspectors
19. With this ...., Mr Hady can carry this gun anywhere inside the country.
   a) card   b) permission   c) permit   d) certificate
20. Children should ask their parents' .... before making phone calls.
   a) permit   b) permission   c) licence   d) leave
21. He was .... that the same mistakes would not be repeated.
   a) designer   b) fashioned   c) planner   d) determined
22. We want our students to become useful and responsible members of ....
   a) village   b) society   c) group   d) team
23. Smoking is no longer considered socially .... by many people.
   a) excitable   b) expectable   c) acceptable   d) permeable
24. There were several .... guarding the main gates of the city.
   a) soldiers   b) wounded   c) thieves   d) presidents
25. A healthy lifestyle includes having a nutritious diet and good personal ....
   a) sanitation   b) hygiene   c) generosity   d) honour
26. Oh, I love that blue tie on you. The colour .... you and the shirt.
   a) suits   b) benefits   c) takes   d) pursuits
27. Samir is .... to drive a car but not a lorry.
   a) wanted   b) let   c) obliged   d) licensed
28. I felt so unfit after the exams that I decided to .... a gym.
   a) enroll   b) attach   c) join   d) connect
29. Put the ball in the right .... to make it easy to hit.
   a) situation   b) mark   c) site   d) position
30. Modern technology has .... everyone's lives through different useful inventions.
   a) proved   b) achieved   c) removed   d) improved
31. After graduation, Dr Aisha worked as a research .... at Cairo University.
   a) assistant   b) seller   c) director   d) employer
32. The new factory in our town .... more than a thousand workers.
   a) employs   b) swallows   c) allows   d) inhibits
33. Although everyone in my family works very hard, we aren't a .... family.
   a) destitute   b) healthy   c) wealthy   d) poor
34. Tiredness can seriously affect your .... to drive.
   a) force   b) ability   c) mobility   d) authority
35. Scientists hope to find a .... for all kinds of cancer someday.
   a) result   b) cure   c) theory   d) release
36. The company always .... all the new staff to use the new computer system.
   a) knows   b) arranges   c) trains   d) learns

37 The lawyer .... for a reduction in the sentence of his client.
a) bullied b) charged c) encouraged d) argued

38 Exercise and good food are essential to health and physical ....
a) disease b) illness c) fitness d) epidemic

39 Florence Nightingale could .... new ideas in nursing and treating wounded people.
a) introduce b) prevent c) deduce d) design

40 I have very poor technical .... Could you help me fix my computer?
a) skulls b) terms c) methods d) skills

41 Football and golf are examples of .... games.
a) outdoor b) indoor c) hall d) external

42 The company staff have regular .... to discuss achievements and problems.
a) interviews b) lectures c) meetings d) views

43 When the children stopped singing, everyone .... their hands in admiration.
a) broke b) shouted c) cheered d) clapped

44 The Conservative Party have .... England for the last decade.
a) governed b) relied c) relayed d) divided

45 The police are now .... the crime scene where two people were killed.
a) excepting b) expecting c) inspecting d) accepting

Expressions, idioms, prepositions, derivatives, synonyms and antonyms Exercises

46 The audience was so .... of the band that they stood clapping for ten minutes after the show.
a) appreciate b) appreciated c) appreciative d) appreciatively

47 You should be more .... of other people's points of view.
a) respect b) respected c) respectable d) respectful

48 She would be a good nurse. She has a very kind ....
a) person b) personal c) personality d) personally

49 I found university work very difficult, but my friends were always very ....
a) encouraging b) encouraged c) courage d) discouraging

50 I'd prefer not to talk about that. It's something very ....
a) personnel b) personal c) personality d) person

51 Some students need more .... than others at school.
a) encourage b) encouraged c) encouragement d) discouraging

52 The company advertised for a new .... of marketing.
a) direct b) directions c) director d) directory

53 Liverpool has given a very .... performance this season.
a) impress b) impression c) impressive d) impressing

54 My father's job .... up much of his life.
a) takes b) makes c) gives d) shows

55 Florence Nightingale was born .... a wealthy family, but she insisted on being a nurse.
a) in b) into c) at d) from

56 There are many things that you can't do .... your own.
a) in b) of c) at d) on

57 The science teacher described the process of photosynthesis .... detail.
a) in b) at c) for d) about

58 The adjective "personal" is a synonym to the adjective ....
a) general b) public c) private d) alone

59 The word "failure" is an antonym to the word ....
a) achievement b) invention c) assignment d) argument

60 The verb "appreciate" can be the opposite to the verb ....
a) award b) achieve c) value d) disvalue

61 The word "suitable" is similar in meaning to ....
a) additional b) acceptable c) respectable d) convenient

62 Spanish is the .... language in all South American countries except for Brazil.
a) strange b) recordable c) official d) employable

Previous Exams Exercises

63 A good director is the one who .... his employees' efforts. (ث.ع ٢٠١١)
a) neglects b) degrades c) communicates d) appreciates

64 One cannot drive a car without a driving .... (ث.ع ٢٠١٣)
a) seatbelt b) licence c) leisure d) safeguard

65 I .... people who can turn a negative situation into a positive one. (ث.ع ٢٠١٤)
a) examine b) heal c) cure d) admire

66 Dr. Aisha Abd El-Rahman was .... her degree in 1939. (السودان ٢٠١٨)
a) awarded b) got c) give d) rewarded

67 We must take .... steps to deal with the problem. (الأزهر ٢٠١٩)
a) sure b) negative c) positive d) convinced

68 I .... your support. Thanks for coming. (الأزهر ٢٠١٩)
a) understand b) appreciate c) know d) realise

69 Zewail's work, which had .... up much of his personal life, is still appreciated today. (ث.ع ٢٠١٩)
a) grown b) followed c) made d) taken

70 My uncle is in .... of an international corporation. He led it to success. (ث.ع ٢٠١٩)
a) responsible b) charge c) director d) representative







Relative clauses — جُمل الوصل

- هى الجمل التى تستخدم فيها ضمائر الوصل للربط بينها، وضمائر الوصل هى:

who/that	whom	which/that	whose	where	when
للفاعل والمفعول العاقل	للمفعول العاقل	للفاعل والمفعول غير العاقل	للملكية	للمكان	للزمان

- تحل ضمائر الوصل بدل الاسم أو الضمير المكرر فى الجملة الثانية.
- غالبًا ما يأتى ضمير الوصل بعد الاسم المراد وصله مباشرة.

1 اسم عاقل + **who/that** الذى/التى/الذين + **verb**

- The man who/that (~~He~~) took drugs has been banned from playing again.

- تحل (who/that) محل الفاعل العاقل المكرر فى الجملة الثانية ويأتى بعدهما فعل.

- Mr Mohammed comes from Assuit. He teaches us English.
- Mr Mohammed, who (~~He~~) teaches us English, comes from Assuit.

- (بعدها فعل فهى محل فاعل)

2 اسم عاقل + **who/whom/that** الذى/التى/الذين + **subject**

- The people who/whom/that we met at the party were very friendly.

- تحل (who/whom/that) محل المفعول العاقل المكرر فى الجملة الثانية ويأتى بعدهم فاعل .

- Ahmed is my best friend. I always ask him for advice.
- Ahmed, whom/who I always ask (~~him~~) for advice, is my best friend.

- (بعدها فاعل فهى محل مفعول.)

ملحوظة: إذا وجد حرف جر قبل النقط أو الفراغ لا نستخدم that ولا who ونستخدم whom فقط .

- The beggar to whom (~~that/who~~) people gave money wasn't poor.







Check Point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The police caught the man .... killed his neighbour.
   a) whose   b) he   c) whom   d) who
2. The woman .... we gave the money was happy.
   a) whose   b) whom   c) where   d) which
3. I'm not one of those people .... eat standing up.
   a) whose   b) which   c) whom   d) who
4. I know the man .... you were talking to.
   a) which   b) where   c) who   d) whose
5. My aunt, with .... I live, is very kind to me.
   a) whom   b) that   c) who   d) whose

3 اسم غير عاقل + which/that الذى/التى/الذين + verb/subject

- The food which/that was out of the fridge went bad. (بعدها فعل فهى محل فاعل)
- The film which/that we watched yesterday was boring. (بعدها فاعل فهى محل مفعول)

- تحل (which/that) محل الفاعل أو المفعول غير العاقل المكرر في الجملة الثانية إذا كانتا محل فاعل فيأتي بعدهما فى الربط فعل وإذا كانتا محل مفعول فيأتي بعدهما فاعل لأنه لم يحذف.

- The watch is expensive. It tells the accurate time.
- The watch which/that (~~it~~) tells the accurate time is expensive.
- The watch is expensive. I have just bought it.
- The watch which/that I have just bought (~~it~~) is expensive.

4 اسم عاقل/غير عاقل + whose للملكية + sentence (subject + verb + object)

- We met the woman whose husband is a doctor.
- The car whose colour is red won the race.

- تستخدم (whose) للملكية ويتبعها اسم يملكه الاسم الذى قبلها.
- تحل محل صفات الملكية الآتية his/her/its/their

- Said is very happy. He has a new car.
- Said, who has a new car, is very happy.
- Said, whose car is new, is happy.
- My car is outside the house. It is dark blue.
- My car, which is dark blue, is outside the house.
- My car, whose colour is dark blue, is outside the house.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Please, give me the keys .... are on the table.
   a) whose b) which c) what d) whom
2. Saber, ... house has been demolished, is very sad.
   a) whose b) who c) whom d) that
3. Where are the shoes .... I bought this morning?
   a) whose b) whom c) what d) that
4. The book .... I'm reading now is very exciting.
   a) what b) who c) whom d) which
5. Tom, ... friend lives in Cairo, has gone on holiday to Egypt.
   a) who b) when c) whose d) that

5 مكان + **where = which .... حرف جر + sentence**

- The hotel where we stayed for 3 days wasn't very clean.
- The place which we spent our holiday in was really beautiful.

- تستخدم (where) للمكان بمعنى حيث .المكرر فى الجملة الثانية (in/on/at + place/there)

- The flat is very small. I live ~~in it~~.
- The flat where I live (which **I live** in) is very small. - (حيث أسكن = التى أسكن فيها)
- The flat where I live (in which **I live**) is very small.

- (يأتى قبل which حرف جر لكن where غالبًا لا يأتى قبلها حرف جر)

6 اسم يدل على الزمن + **when = which/that .... حرف جر + sentence**

- It's seven o'clock when I get up (~~at that time~~).

- تستخدم (when) للزمان بمعنى عندما .المكرر فى الجملة الثانية (in/on/at + time/then)

- 2001 is the year when my brother graduated from university.
- 2001 is the year which my brother graduated in from university.
- 2001 is the year in which my brother graduated from university.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The meeting at .... I met a lot of my friends was fruitful.
   a) when b) which c) what d) where
2. Cairo, ... I live, is a crowded city.
   a) which b) that c) where d) when
3. Eighteen is the age .... we can get licences and identity cards.
   a) at when b) on which c) in which d) at which
4. October, 1973 was the month .... our armed forces won a great war.
   a) which b) when c) where d) whose
5. This is the factory .... my father used to work.
   a) where b) whose c) that d) which

أنواع جمل الوصل

١- النوع الأول يعطى معلومات أساسية، وبدون هذه المعلومات سيكون من الصعب أن نعرف من - أو ما هو - المقصود. ونستخدم فى هذا النوع (who/which/whom)، ولا نستخدم (comma) قبل أو بعد عبارة الوصل. ويمكن استخدام (that) بدلًا من ضمائر الوصل المذكورة .

- The man who (that) robbed the bank was sent to prison.
- The book which (that) tells you about history is useful.

٢- النوع الثانى يعطى معلومات إضافية وليست ضرورية لفهم معنى الجملة، ولا بد من استخدام (comma) قبل وبعد عبارة الوصل. ولا تستخدم (that) فى هذا النوع.

- My father, whom I love, works as a teacher.
- Alaa's car, which he left outside, cost him L.E. 200.000.

Prepositions before relative pronouns حروف الجر قبل ضمائر الوصل

- إذا وجد حرف جر فيوضع قبل which/whom وهما اللذان يختصان بالمفعول ويمكن قبل whose.

- This is the article in which she writes about science.
- That is the stadium at which we saw the cup final.

- لكى يختار الطالب حرف الجر الصحيح عليه أن يعيد المفعول الذى حل محله which/whom ثم يرى ما هو حرف الجر المناسب الذى كان قبله، فسوف يجد أن المفعول يأخذ حرف جر معينًا سواء: at/in/on/about/to/for, etc.



واليك المثال الآتى:

• The problem about which we were talking had been settled.

• The problem had been settled. We were talking about it. فتكون الجملة الأصلية

واليك جملة للتدريب:

• The restaurant .... I usually go is splendid.

(about which - in which - at which - to which)

- ولحل هذه الجملة على الطالب أن يعلم أن which هى محل it العائدة على restaurant فى الجملة الثانية فعند فصل الجملتين يكون الآتى:

• The restaurant is splendid. I usually go .... it. (about – in – at – to)

- ولعلك الآن علمت الإجابة وهى go to it فتكون الإجابة to which

What

- تستخدم what كرابط ولا يأتى قبلها اسم تعود عليه وهى تساوى the thing(s) that وتأتى أيضًا أول الكلام.

فعل/فاعل	what ما

• I didn't understand what he had said. (what had been said).
• I can't give you what you need.
• We'd better decide what we need to buy.
• What puzzled me was Ahmed's attitude.

Extra Points

1. عند وجود حرف جر يمكن كتابته بأكثر من طريقة:

▸ He bought a new camera. He took interesting photos with it.
▸ He bought a new camera with which he took interesting photos.
▸ He bought a new camera which he took interesting photos with.

2. نستخدم that بعد all وبعد صفات التفضيل وبعد الكلمات الآتية:

• any (thing) - every (thing) - few - little - many - much - no (thing) - none - some (thing)

▸ Is this all that you want me to do?
▸ There isn't anything that we can eat in this house.
▸ This is the best book that I have ever read.

3. لا نستخدم حرف جر قبل (that/who):

▸ This is the clever boy about whom I told you.
▸ This is the clever boy that (who/whom) I told you about.



❹ يمكن استخدام why (for which) كضمير وصل كالآتى:

- I'd like to know the reason why (for which) he decided not to come.

❺ تستخدم (which) للمكان إذا لم يكن هناك حدث أو نشاط يحدث داخل المكان (وهى بدل الضمير it أو they):

- Cairo, which is the capital of Egypt, is very crowded.
- Cairo, which I love most, is the capital of Egypt.

❻ تستخدم (which) لتشير إلى جملة كاملة قبلها:

- My brother won a valuable prize, which made me happy.

❼ هناك بعض الكلمات تستخدم كاسم وفعل، فإذا استخدمت كاسم فإنها تسبق بـ whose مثل:

stay, dream, work, play, likes and dislikes, end, hopes, etc.

- People whose likes and dislikes are the same are good friends.
- People whose stay ended should renew it.

حالات حذف ضمير الوصل

❶ إذا كان بعده مبنى للمجهول نحذف which + v.to be ونضع p.p.:

- I still remember the encouragement given to me by my parents. (which was)

❷ إذا كان بعده معلوم نحذف which/who ونضع v-ing:

- The boy sitting beside me is naughty. (who sits/who is sitting)

❸ إذا كان بعده اسم أو اسم موصوف نحذف who/which + v.to be ولا نضع شيئًا:

- Hossam Hassan, a famous footballer, won many prizes. (who was)

❹ يمكن حذف (who/which/that) إذا استخدمت للمفعول.

- The boy who (whom/that) I wanted to talk to was not at home.
- The boy I wanted to talk to was not at home.



Grammar Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The student .... has come first in the competition is being awarded a medal.
   a) whose b) who c) whom d) when
2. Their argument, ... continued for 3 hours, was finally resolved.
   a) whose b) when c) what d) which
3. February is the month .... a lot of tourists visit Egypt.
   a) when b) which c) what d) where
4. The sweater .... my father bought me is very big.
   a) what b) whose c) whom d) which
5. Miss Ola, ... works at the bank, has been promoted.
   a) whose b) who c) that d) where
6. Sharm El Sheikh is the resort .... we enjoy diving.
   a) which b) whose c) where d) when
7. Tanta, ... is Egypt's fifth largest city, is famous for sweets.
   a) where b) that c) when d) which
8. The person, ... car had been stolen, reported the police.
   a) whose b) where c) which d) that
9. The scientist .... discovered a new planet has won the Nobel Prize.
   a) when b) which c) who d) whom
10. My grandfather says that he proudly remembers the day .... he got his university degree.
    a) whom b) when c) where d) whose
11. The boy .... the teacher punished was guilty.
    a) which b) where c) whom d) whose
12. I want to speak to the person .... is responsible for the garage.
    a) whom b) that c) where d) whose
13. Ahmed got the best marks in English, ... was a great surprise to me.
    a) who b) what c) which d) whom
14. My teacher wanted to know the reason .... I was always late for school.
    a) what b) why c) that d) which
15. The shop didn't have .... we wanted.
    a) what b) which c) that d) where
16. Adel is my friend .... brother won the poetry competition.
    a) who b) whom c) whose d) that

17 Cleopatra, ... was very beautiful, was a great pharaoh of ancient Egypt.
a) that b) whose c) which d) who

18 Lamia, ... father is an important man, was born in Assuit in 2004.
a) her b) whose c) who d) that

19 *Lord of the Flies* is a story .... a group of school boys are shipwrecked on an island.
a) in which b) which c) that d) at which

20 The nurse, ... looks after young children, has worked at the hospital for ten years.
a) whose b) that c) who d) whom

21 Have you seen .... I bought from London?
a) what b) which c) that d) where

22 She asked me where I had been, ... I replied, "I can't tell you."
a) about which b) in which c) to which d) at which

23 The person .... does most of the cooking in our family is my mother.
a) whose b) whom c) which d) who

24 Woman's Day, ... marks an important event in 1909, is on March 8th.
a) that b) which c) when d) in when

25 Yesterday, my brother and I played a long game of tennis, ... made me very tired.
a) which b) where c) what d) who

26 1837 was the year .... Victoria became queen of Britain.
a) where b) which c) when d) at which

27 Alexandria, ... my mother was born, is in northern Egypt.
a) to which b) which c) that d) where

28 Alexandria, ... is Egypt's second biggest city, is a wonderful place for a holiday.
a) that b) which c) where d) in which

29 Raneem El Welily, ... was born in 1989, is a famous squash player.
a) whose b) that c) who d) whom

30 They said something very cruel, ... I think they should apologise.
a) which b) at which
c) about which d) for which

31 Raneem El Welily won a competition in 2015, ... made her the number one women's squash player in the world.
a) which b) what c) whose d) who

32 Her work, ... took up much of her personal life, is still appreciated today.
a) in which b) where c) which d) that

33 Was Rupert Hentzu one of the Six Men .... guarded Duke Michael?
a) who b) whose c) which d) whom

34 What is the name of the house .... Rassendyll and his men stayed?
a) in where b) which c) where d) what

35 That's the house .... entrance is guarded by two big dogs.
a) which b) whose c) where d) in which

36 The man .... that bus is my brother.
a) that driving b) whom drives c) who driving d) driving

37 People .... stealing are imprisoned.
a) who caught b) caught
c) who catch d) who are catching

38 I wrote down all .... I have done.
a) which b) whose c) that d) where

39 The man .... on the train last week was an old classmate.
a) whose meeting b) meeting c) who met d) I met

40 The students .... wishes have come true are very happy.
a) who b) whose c) that d) whom

41 The people .... lives were saved thanked the policeman a lot.
a) who b) whom c) that d) whose

42 At the end of our street there's a baker's .... we buy our bread.
a) who b) where c) whom d) that

43 Violent storms are .... people fear nowadays.
a) when b) where c) what d) which

44 The man in .... house we live is very generous.
a) whose b) which c) what d) whom

45 He bought a car, ... I can't remember the name.
a) where b) of which c) by whom d) of what

Previous Exams *Exercises*

46 Have you seen .... she bought from the Book Fair? (دور أول ٢٠١٩)
a) which b) that c) what d) when

47 The man ....wearing the white shirt is Ahmed's uncle. (الأزهر ٢٠١٩)
a) who's b) whose c) that d) who

48 Name the actor .... plays Salah El Deen. (ث.ع ٢٠١١)
a) which b) whose c) whom d) who



49 He lost the book .... him last week. (ث.ع ٢٠١١)

a) which lent b) when I lent c) who lent d) I lent

50 It is said he was a man .... to have the sight of an eagle and courage of a lion. (ث.ع ٢٠١٢)

a) who appeared b) he appeared c) that appears d) and appears

51 I met the doctor .... car was stolen last week. (ث.ع ٢٠١٣)

a) whom b) whom c) whose d) which

52 The teacher, ... students passed the exam, was so proud of himself. (ث.ع ٢٠١٦)

a) that b) which c) whose d) where

53 I know .... he married her! For her money. (السودان ٢٠١٦)

a) why b) who c) what d) which

54 The manager, ... secretary is seriously ill, has to type the letters by himself. (ث.ع ٢٠١٦)

a) who b) whose c) where d) that

55 Dr Mostafa .... books are distinguished, teaches at Zagazig University. (ث.ع ٢٠١٨)

a) whom b) who c) whose d) that

56 I saw my old friends in the garden .... we used to play when we were young. (الأزهر ٢٠١٦)

a) which b) when c) where d) what

57 He left for Luxor, the city .... he lives in. (الأزهر ٢٠١١)

a) where b) which c) that d) in which

Language Functions

Expressing enthusiasm: **التعبير عن الحماس:**

- Hey, that's terrific.
- I can't tell you how happy that makes me.
- That's fantastic!
- I can't wait (to start).
- I'm really looking forward to it.
- Wow! That's brilliant!
- Wonderful news!
- That's really great news, isn't it?
- I'm over the moon.
- I'm really enthusiastic about it.
- What a great idea!

Skills Exercises

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The Pyramids, with their greatness, elegance and stability tell us of great organising ability. The ancient Egyptians did not wait for anyone else to set them an example, they just used their imagination and then got on with the job, making their dreams come true. They were pioneers, inventors, leading the entire world. We are not suggesting that we should be building pyramids now, but we should have the same spirit of enthusiasm and originality. The Egyptian people have not changed down the generations; they have the same intelligence and abilities as their forefathers. Somehow, somewhere along the line, they have lost their initiative and self-confidence. We should not isolate ourselves from others, but we should not always wait for others to make the first move.

Egypt began its modem industrial development when Mohamed Ali obtained the help of leading European industrialists to develop it. A barrage on the Nile was built, steam pumping stations were set up, and textile and printing factories were built.

Today the process goes on to modernise Egyptian industry by importing the most up-to-date machinery. The trouble is that by the time we have brought and worked someone else's machinery it has already become out-of-date in the country of origin. Our technologists must depend on their own judgment and design the machinery that is best suited for Egypt's conditions. By this way, we can once again become the leaders of the world of technology not those who always lag behind. What was possible in the past can be possible again today.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When did Egypt begin its modern industrial development?

a) During the reign of the ancient Egyptians.
b) During the reign of Mohamed Ali.
c) During the reign of Nasser.
d) During the modern age.

2. Why was the barrage built on the Nile?

a) To improve textile industry.
c) To improve the agricultural lands.
b) To improve printing factories.
d) To improve electricity.



3. How are we trying to modernise the Egyptian industry nowadays?

a) By following others' examples.
b) By having self-confidence and originality.
c) By refusing help from others.
d) By importing the most up-to-date machinery.

4. What does the underlined pronoun "it" mean?

a) Egypt.
b) Industrial development.
c) A barrage.
d) The Nile.

B) Answer the following questions:

5. Give two reasons why the ancient Egyptians achieved success with their Pyramids.
6. Two things made the ancient Egyptians different from us today. Mention them.
7. Mention two forms of progress during Mohammed Ali's reign.
8. What have the Egyptian people lost despite their intelligence and ability? Mention two things.

2 Write an essay of about (180) words on the following:

"A female character you admire and look upon as a model."

3 Translation:

A) Translate into Arabic:

1. Dr Aisha Abdel Rahman played a great role in arguing for women's rights. Thanks to her achievements, many women were convinced to have a successful career.
2. Florence Nightingale gave a good example of devoting life to help others. She was also the founder of the first Nursing School in England.
3. Although it is a difficult job, Lotfia El Nadi was the first Egyptian woman to be a pilot. She proved that the Egyptian woman can do miracles.
4. Many women have provided great models for the next generations to follow. They give real examples of the women's ability to succeed in all fields.
5. There are many things to be said in favour of technological advancement which undoubtedly makes people's lives easier. However, they caused some damage to the environment where we live. (ث.ع (معدلة) ٢٠١٦)
6. We can gain more experience from the situations we get through. Through experience, the young can learn more and acquire more skills and abilities. (ث.ع (معدلة) ٢٠١٦)

B) Translate into English:

١- تعطى المشروعات القومية الكبرى دفعة قوية لاقتصاد مصر بتوفير فرص العمل وتنمية الكثير من المناطق التى قد تساهم فى زيادة الدخل القومى.

٢- أدت انجازات السيدات المصريات مثل عائشة عبد الرحمن إلى حصول المرأة العربية على حقوقها فأصبحت تعمل جنبًا إلى جنب الرجال وتؤدى نفس واجباتهم.

٣- يرى الكثيرون أن العولمة تخدم الدول الغنية على حساب الدول الفقيرة؛ فالدول الغنية تستغل الموارد لزيادة رفاهية شعوبها بغض النظر عن أى ضرر قد يعود على الدول الأخرى. (ث.ع ٢٠١١)

٤- العلم والعمل هما السبيل الوحيد لتحقيق الرفاهية والتقدم لأى أمة فهما السبيل الوحيد لمواكبة التطور السريع فى جميع المجالات فى عصرنا الحديث. (ث.ع ٢٠١٦)

Enrich your Vocabulary

advancement	تقدم	models	نماذج
asserting	التأكيد	provide	يوفر
devote	يكرس	share/contribute	ساهمت
generations	أجيال	undoubtedly	بلا شك
globalisation	العولمة	welfare	الرفاهية

Open General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. If the Egyptian pound .... against other currencies, it may not be good for exporters.
   a) appreciates b) estimates
   c) increases d) grows
2. All the people waited in .... silence as the funeral procession went past.
   a) respect b) respected
   c) respectful d) respectfully
3. The principal took the .... that the students didn't need music classes.
   a) situation b) position
   c) location d) post
4. Technology will play a significant .... in classroom teaching in the next few years in Egypt.
   a) rule b) device
   c) role d) character
5. The Egyptian Cancer .... is doing great efforts to fight cancer in Egypt.
   a) Society b) Community
   c) Team d) School
6. I've managed to .... my father into going to the match on Friday.
   a) cause b) make
   c) accept d) argue
7. The police officer was .... that the house was robbed by a professional gang.
   a) negative b) positive
   c) efficient d) accepted
8. The storm became stronger by .... until the rain was pouring down.
   a) grades b) time
   c) degrees d) classes
9. My sister sang a .... at the school concert because she had a beautiful voice.
   a) group b) solo
   c) tune d) note
10. Most smokers take .... smoking when they are teenagers.
    a) up b) off
    c) in d) down

11 I wouldn't advise .... on the mobile phone while driving; you might lose concentration.

a) to look
b) looking
c) look
d) to be looking

12 I feel exhausted; I think I .... to bed now.

a) am going
b) will have gone
c) go
d) will go

13 Ola .... apply for several jobs lately. She needs money to support her family.

a) has been having
b) has to
c) has had to
d) had to

14 I heard Wessam .... to her friend on the telephone yesterday.

a) to be talking
b) talking
c) to talk
d) talked

15 .... I borrow your pen for a moment, please?

a) Might
b) Shall
c) Should
d) Must

16 My brother .... in that job for twelve years before he decided to change it.

a) works
b) has been working
c) had been working
d) is working

17 The teacher went on .... even after the bell had rung.

a) explains
b) explaining
c) to have explained
d) to explain

18 I am supposed .... the Japanese delegation at 9 am tomorrow morning.

a) to meet
b) meeting
c) meet
d) will meet

19 Ahmed was happy .... home and be among his family after his long absence.

a) returns
b) returned
c) to return
d) returning

20 He really .... to have his hair cut today.

a) able
b) should
c) must
d) ought

Test 3 Based on Unit 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mr Gaber is the person .... I get a lot of information.
   a) whom b) from whom c) who d) whose
2. Farouk is flying .... for the first time tomorrow. He'll have no co-pilot.
   a) lonely b) lone c) solar d) solo
3. The book, ... I bought last week, is really interesting.
   a) where b) that c) which d) what
4. Hesham has just got his driving ...., and already he wants to buy a car.
   a) mark b) licence c) qualification d) degree
5. Friday is the day .... I visit my relatives in our village.
   a) at which b) which c) where d) when
6. He invited me to the party, ... was very kind of him.
   a) which b) that c) when d) whose
7. Omar has received a master's .... in conservation management.
   a) effect b) flight c) degree d) licence
8. .... he needs to live comfortably is a big house and a new car.
   a) That b) What c) Which d) Why
9. I'm hoping to study science at university, after .... I'd like to work as a research scientist.
   a) where b) when c) who d) which
10. Mr Maged .... all his students to do the best that they can do.
    a) argues for b) effects c) encourages d) impresses
11. These days, women have as good an education as men, ... I think is a good thing.
    a) which b) when c) who d) where
12. He says he's busy, ... he really means he doesn't want to go out this evening.
    a) in which b) to which c) at which d) by which
13. When you argue for something, you try to persuade us that it is ....
    a) wrong b) right c) expensive d) terrible
14. A: Which books are yours? B: The .... on the table.
    a) one b) ones c) those d) mine

15 Which phrasal verb means "to fill or use an amount of space or time"?

a) Take off.
b) Take in.
c) Take up.
d) Take away.

16 I'd prefer to watch a match rather than .... to music.

a) to listen
b) listening
c) listened
d) listen

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A clever person used to mean a person who would exert efforts to achieve a legitimate aim. Hence, a clever pupil is a bright one who makes the best of his educational chances. A clever lawyer is one who handles the law so as to prove that his client is in the right. A clever doctor gives the right diagnosis for his patients and prescribes the right medicine for them. This is perfectly feasible in a simple society, which will allow a good number of people to do their best to succeed in their pursuits or better their life conditions.

But in a society that has grown in complexity so that only the fittest can survive the term has taken a new meaning. If two persons have one chance, the cleverer of them is the one who can push the other out of the way to secure the chance for himself.

Worse still, a clever person might twist it wrong to make it look right. A clever lawyer in the sense of the word is he who manages to prove the innocence of a wrong doer. A doctor who entices more patients to go to him and consequently makes more money out of them would be a clever doctor. A company, whose products are not much in demand, employs a clever propagandist to increase its sales. There are clever men both in commerce and in politics. Even in government offices there are clever social climbers that get all gains with the least efforts although they aren't efficient. Yet, there are still honest people in society who have a reputation for doing what they are convinced is right.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What does an honest doctor do?

a) Makes as much money as he can from his patients.
b) Entices more patients to go to him.
c) Prescribes the wrong medicine.
d) Gives the right diagnosis.

2. **Why is competition in complex societies unfair?**
   a) Because the smartest can survive.
   b) Because the strongest can survive.
   c) Because the best can survive.
   d) Because the fattest can survive.
3. **What does the underlined word '<u>entices</u>' mean?**
   a) Take.
   b) Persuade.
   c) Prove.
   d) Demand.
4. **What is the best title to the passage?**
   a) A simple society.
   b) Honest and dishonest people.
   c) A chance for oneself.
   d) Life conditions.

B) Answer the following questions:

5. Two things define social climbers. Mention them.
6. Give two examples of honest people in simple societies.
7. Give two examples of people who twist the truth.
8. Why do you think a modern man dislikes being described as clever?

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

Not only are women the primary caretakers of children and elders in every country of the world, but they participate in the national economy and the country's workforce as well.

B) Translate into English:

- إن التخطيط للمستقبل من سمات البلاد المتقدمة والأفراد الناجحين، وهذا يحتاج إلى العمل الجاد لتحقيق الأهداف التى تعود بالنفع على الفرد والمجتمع وتحقيق النجاح فى كل نواحى الحياة.

4 Write an essay of about (180) words on the following:

How can the Egyptian woman take part in making Egypt a better place?



Unit 4 Emily Dickinson: "If I can stop"

Objectives

Listening : Listening for gist and for specific information
Grammar : Distributives: *all, both, half, each, every, either, neither*
Reading : Reading for detailed information
Critical thinking : Understanding the importance of helping people
Functions : Summarising and paraphrasing
Writing : Writing a review of a poem





Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

aching (adj) (n)	مؤلم/ألم	in vain	بلا جدوى
alive (adj)	على قيد الحياة	moving (adj)	محرك للمشاعر/محزن
challenging (adj	متحد/صعب التحقيق	publisher (n)	ناشر
ease (v) (d) (n)	يريح/يخفف/يخف/إراحة	robin (n)	عصفور أبو الحناء
fainting (n)	إغماء/فقدان الوعي		

Vocabulary on Listening

adult (n) (adj)	بالغ	normal (adj)	طبيعى
author (n)	مؤلف	partly (adv)	جزئيًا
emotions (n)	مشاعر	poet (n)	شاعر/شاعرة
instead (adv)	بدلًا من ذلك	punctuation (n)	علامات الترقيم
line (n)	بيت شعرى	rhyme (n) (v) (d)	قافية/يتناغم
lovely (adj)	جميل	title (n)	عنوان
marry (v) (y ied)	يتزوج	traditionally (adv)	تقليدى/بطريقة تقليدية
modern (adj)	حديث/عصرى	verse (n)	مقطع شعرى

Vocabulary on Reading

cool (v) (ed)	يخفف ألم	safe (adj)	آمن
front (n)	مقدمة/جبهة	success (n)	نجاح
nest (n)	عش	unconscious (adj)	فاقد للوعى
pain (n)	ألم	waste (v) (d) (n)	يضيع/يسرف/نفاية
paraphrase (v) (d) (n)	يعيد صياغة/إعادة صياغة	weak (adj)	ضعيف



Critical Thinking, Communication & Workbook Vocabulary

English	Arabic
angle worm (n)	دودة الأرض
bite (v)	يعض
blond (adj)	أشقر الشعر
bones (n)	عظام
burden (n)	عبء
castle (n)	قلعة
character (n)	شخصية
circle (n) (v)	دائرة/يحيط بدائرة
closed (adj)	مغلق
comment (n)	تعليق
crash (v) (ed) (n)	يصطدم/اصطدام
describe (v) (d)	يصف
fellow (n)	شخص
fine (v) (d) (n)	يغرم/غرامة
headache (n)	صداع
heart (n)	قلب

English	Arabic
lighten (v) (ed)	يضيء/يخفف
member (n)	عضو/ فرد
message (n)	رسالة
negative (adj)	سلبى
passenger (n)	راكب/مسافر
perfect (adj)	كامل/تام
quotation (n)	اقتباس
raw (adj)	نيء/غير مطهى
rescuer (n)	منقذ
review (n)	مقال نقدى
rocks (n)	صخور
sadness (n)	حزن
shelf (n)	رف
soil (n)	تربة
summarise (v) (d)	يلخص
useless (adj)	غير مفيد





Focus on Vocabulary

aching ألم	pain
alive على قيد الحياة	living, not dead
challenging متحدٍ/صعب التحقيق	interesting but difficult to do
ease يريح/يخفف/يقلل	make something less difficult
fainting إغماء/فقدان الوعي	becoming unconscious for a short time
in vain بلا جدوى	without success
moving محرك للمشاعر/محزن	making you feel strong emotions, especially sadness
publisher ناشر/دار نشر	a person or company that produces books for people to buy
robin عصفور أبو الحناء	a small brown bird with an orange front

Expressions & Idioms

at that time	في ذلك الوقت	follow the rules	يتبع القواعد
cool pain	يخفف ألما	for a short time	لفترة قصيرة
ease the stress	يخفف من التوتر	give a job	يعطي مهمة
find it easy to	يجد من السهل أن	have a headache	لديه صداع
follow the advice	يتبع النصيحة	lighten the burden	يخفف عبء



Phrases & Prepositions

cut ..... into	يقطع .... إلى	stay in	يقيم فى
different to	مختلف عن	stop .... from	يوقف .... عن
move to	يتحرك إلى	talk about	يتحدث عن

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
ache	يؤلم	ache	ألم	aching	مؤلم
challenge	يتحدى	challenge	تحدٍّ	challenging	متحدٍّ/صعب التحقيق
comment	يعلق	comment	تعليق	commentary	تعليقى
ease	يريح	easiness	راحة	easy	مرتاح/مسترخٍ
----------		emotion	شعور/ عاطفة	emotional	عاطفى
faint	يفقد الوعى	fainting	إغماء/فقدان الوعى	fainting	هزيل/فى حالة إعياء
pain	يؤلم	pain	ألم	painful	مؤلم
rescue	ينقذ	rescue rescuer	إنقاذ منقذ	----------	
waste	يسرف/يهدر	waste	نفاية	wasteful	مسرف/مبذر

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
ache	يؤلم	hurt	soothe	يريح
alive	حى	conscious	dead/ deceased	ميت
challenge	يتحدى/تحدٍّ	threat	acceptance	قبول
ease (v) (n)	يريح/يخفف	calm	upset/ trouble	يزعج/ يقلق



moving (adj) محرك للمشاعر/محزن	emotional	dull	ممل
adult بالغ	grown-up	adolescent	مراهق
cool (v) يخفف ألم	calm	agitate	يثير/يحفز
painful مؤلم	hurtful	helpful	مفيد
paraphrase يعيد صياغة	rephrase	quote	يقتبس

Important Language Notes



Phrases with "break"

- يستخدم الفعل (break) متبوعًا ببعض الأسماء بمعانى مختلفة منها:

break the rules	يخالف القواعد	break (someone's) heart	يحطم القلب
break the law	يخالف القانون	break a promise	يخلف وعده
break a habit	يخالف عادة	break a link/connection	يقطع العلاقات
break the silence	يكسر/ينهى الصمت	break the record	يحطم الرقم القياسى

- لاحظ أيضًا أن الفعل (break) يستخدم كاسم بمعنى (راحة/فسحة) كما قد يستخدم أيضًا كفعل بمعنى (يأخذ راحة).

- I usually have a lot of chat with my friend at break.
- The staff usually break for lunch at one o'clock.



Adjectives & Adverbs starting with "a"

- بعض الكلمات تتحول إلى صفات أو ظروف بإضافة «a» مثل:

ahead	للأمام	along	بطول
alive	على قيد الحياة	ashore	إلى/للشاطئ
asleep	نائم	alike	متشابه/على حد سواء
awake	مستيقظ	amiss	خاطئ
apart	منفرد/منفصل	aboard	إلى/على متن (سفينة/طائرة)



Other Language Notes



marry | (be) get married

marry
- People in higher social classes are more likely to marry late. يتزوج (بدون مفعول)

marry + someone + to + someone
- They were hoping to marry her to a doctor. يزوج (شخصًا لشخص)

be (get) married to + مفعول
- My daughter is married to a wealthy businessman. يتزوج/متزوج من

be (get) married with
- He is married with two children. متزوج ومعه (أطفال)

review | revision

review
١- مراجعة/إعادة نظر/مراجعة (دروس)
٢- مقال نقدى
- The writer sent the press a review of the research.
- The newspaper published many reviews about the new film.

revision
مراجعة/إعادة نظر/مراجعة (دروس)
- I'm making some revisions to the book for the new edition.
- I know I haven't done enough revision for tomorrow's exam.

title | address

title
١- عنوان (كتاب/مقال/مسرحية)
٢- لقب
٣- مسمى وظيفى
- The title of this play is "King Lear".
- The title "Ms" became much more popular in the 1980s.
- Her official title is Personnel Manager.

address
١- عنوان (مكان)
٢- عنوان موقع إنترنت أو بريد إلكترونى
٣- خطاب/يخاطب
- I can give you the address of a good restaurant.
- They have changed their website address.
- The president delivered his first address in the parliament.

Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The .... of the newspaper's main articles are printed in red.
   a) addresses b) titles c) ranks d) awards
2. The famous journalist writes film .... for the newspapers.
   a) reviews b) revisions c) criticisms d) clerks
3. A loud scream .... the silence of the music hall.
   a) missed b) kept c) damaged d) broke
4. The children were asked to stand in two lines three metres ....
   a) alike b) awake c) apart d) alive
5. The article says there's something .... in the new research.
   a) amiss b) asleep c) along d) ashore

Listening Text

Interviewer : In today's programme, we are looking at the poet Emily Dickinson. With me is the author[1] Clare Lovell who has written a book which calls Emily the first modern poet. Clare, Emily Dickinson was born in 1830, so why do you call her modern?



Clare Lovell : Well traditionally[2], poems usually have three or more verses[3] and in every verse, there are words that rhyme at the end of some of the lines. Today, modern poems do not always follow these rules. They may have either no words that rhyme[4], or words that partly rhyme, for example young and song. Many modern poets do not really follow any rules at all! But their poems work very well.

(1) مؤلف
(2) تقليديًا
(3) أبيات الشعر
(4) قافية/يتناغم

Interviewer : So did Emily Dickinson's poems break the usual rules?

Clare Lovell : Well they were certainly different to most poems at that time. Many of her poems had very short lines, no titles [5], and sometimes no punctuation!

Interviewer : So are her poems challenging [6] to read?

Clare Lovell : No, they aren't. Most of them were changed by her publishers [7] so that they are more like normal poems.

Interviewer : Tell me about her life.

Clare Lovell : When she was a child, she was good at both writing and playing the piano. But she was an unusual adult. She always wore white clothes and she spent nearly all her life at home, where she wrote her poems. She spent about half of her time writing poems, and the other half helping with the housework, as her mother was very ill. She had a few friends but she didn't like to see them often. She preferred to write long letters to each friend instead [8]. She wrote a lot of poems, but most of them were not published until after she died in 1886.

Interviewer : Did she marry?

Clare Lovell : No. We think that two men might have asked her to marry them but she accepted neither of their offers.

Interviewer : Which of her poems is most famous?

Clare Lovell : That is difficult to say! Only a few of her poems were published when she was alive [9], but you can read all of her 1,800 poems today. My favourite poem is called *If I can stop*. It is about how important it is to help people in life. It's very moving [10].

Interviewer : That sounds lovely, I'm going to read that poem next. Thank you for your time.

عناوين (5)
متحد/صعب التحقيق (6)
ناشرون (7)
بدلا من ذلك (8)
على قيد الحياة (9)
محرك للمشاعر (10)



Reading Text



If I can stop

If I can stop one heart from breaking,	إذا استطعت أن أمنع قلبًا من التحطم
I shall not live in vain;	هكذا لم أعش بلا جدوى
If I can ease one life the aching,	إذا استطعت إيقاف شخص يتألم
Or cool one pain,	أو حتى خففت من الألم
Or help one fainting robin	أو أعدت طائر (أبو الحناء) وهو فى حالة إعياء
Unto his nest again,	لعشه مرة أخرى
I shall not live in vain.	هكذا لم أعش بلا جدوى

Notes on some sentences from (Listening & Reading) texts

1 Well they were certainly different to most poems at that time.

- لاحظ استخدام حرف الجر (to) بعد (different) بمعنى مختلف عن.

2 Most of them were changed by her publishers so that they are more like normal poems.

- تستخدم (so that) بمعنى لكى أما (so ...... that) بمعنى (...... جدًا لدرجة أن ......).

3 ...., but most of them were not published until after she died in 1886.

- لاحظ استخدام (after) بعد (until) لاحظ أيضًا وجود الجملتين فى زمن الماضى البسيط.

4 Unto his nest again,

- حرف الجر (unto) هو استخدام قديم بنفس استخدام (to) ولا يستخدم حرف الجر هذا فى اللغة الحديثة.



Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Al Ahram Organisation is one of the country's biggest book ....
   a) writers b) publishers c) directors d) consumers
2. The soldier's book gave a/an .... description of his four years in enemy prison.
   a) moving b) impressive c) effective d) pleasing
3. The man was found .... after three days in the desert, but he was very weak.
   a) dead b) deceased c) missing d) alive
4. Mount Everest is .... for even the most experienced climbers.
   a) peaceful b) soothing c) challenging d) obligatory
5. Many people in the crowd .... in the heat of the music hall while attending the famous singer's concert.
   a) breathed b) slept c) faded d) fainted
6. All the old woman's limbs .... and she trembled with cold.
   a) released b) sneezed c) ached d) eased
7. The doctor gave the child medicine to .... his pain after he fell off the bike.
   a) increase b) ease c) raise d) rise
8. The mother tried .... to get the baby to sleep early. He didn't sleep until twelve o'clock.
   a) in vain b) in detail c) in advance d) in a hurry
9. A/An .... is a small European bird with a brown back and orange face and breast.
   a) eagle b) robin c) hippo d) snake
10. The poor worker had a strong .... in his back from lifting boxes all day.
    a) ease b) rest c) operation d) aching
11. My parents always tell me that it is very bad to break .... you made.
    a) a neck b) a promise c) a record d) a law
12. My father doesn't drink coffee at night as it keeps him ....
    a) asleep b) awake c) aboard d) abroad
13. If you would like to be a .... of the club, please fill in this form.
    a) client b) member c) person d) servant
14. Fifty people were killed in the plane .... which happened in the mountains.
    a) event b) incident c) crash d) break

15 The police asked the woman to .... the robbers who stole her bag.
a) realise b) describe c) know d) specialise

16 She was determined to .... all of her daughters to rich men.
a) marry b) get married c) marriage d) be married

17 The poor weather was .... responsible for the crash.
a) partly b) part c) party d) partial

18 The lifeboat .... the sailors from the sinking boat.
a) drowned b) rescued c) killed d) hanged

19 I can't go out – I've got to do some .... for my exams.
a) revision b) marks c) checks d) repairs

20 .... were usually made from stones to stop attackers from breaking in.
a) Hotels b) Bridges c) Mountains d) Castles

21 The dry rocky .... is suitable for planting palm trees.
a) roof b) soil c) floor d) sand

22 Doctors and nurses should learn to control their ....
a) education b) staff c) gifts d) emotions

23 Computers and the internet have become an essential part of .... life.
a) modern b) ancient c) strange d) odd

24 While driving, your attention should be fixed on the road ....
a) along b) ahead c) apart d) alive

25 I was going to write you an e-mail, but I decided to call ....
a) well b) away c) instead d) outside

26 I've read one of Yehia Haqqi's books, but I can't remember the ....
a) address b) title c) speech d) text

27 The teacher asked us to read the first two .... of the poem and answer the question.
a) copies b) paragraphs c) verses d) essays

28 The famous runner broke the world .... for the 1500 metres race.
a) neck b) promise c) record d) law

29 Most wild birds build their .... of branches and leaves to lay their eggs.
a) nets b) houses c) rooms d) nests

30 The accident victim was .... but still breathing when the ambulance arrived.
a) dead b) unconscious c) useless d) deceased

31 When his anger had ………………, he sat down and talked.
a) heated b) increased c) slowed d) cooled

32 My father asked me not to ……………… my money on unhealthy food.
a) waste b) benefit c) keep d) save

33 It ……………… my heart to see the child with heart problems so sick.
a) mended b) kept c) broke d) missed

34 I think it isn't easy for a young pupil to ……………… this poem however easy it is.
a) calculate b) publish c) paraphrase d) appreciate

35 The coach said he didn't have any ……………… after losing the match.
a) estimations b) comments c) accounts d) feelings

36 His bad habits are starting to have a/an ……………… effect on his work.
a) positive b) impressive c) acceptable d) negative

37 He was accepted for the job because his English was ……………… .
a) perfect b) negative c) affecting d) influent

38 More women are getting new jobs which were ……………… for men only.
a) accidentally b) deliberately c) aimlessly d) traditionally

39 Our primary school teacher made up ……………… which we sang loudly.
a) articles b) rhymes c) notes d) rhythms

40 I don't want to become a/an ……………… to my children when I'm old.
a) entertainment b) easiness c) pledge d) burden

41 Many factories were punished because of breaking the ………………, throwing their waste in the river.
a) neck b) promise c) record d) law

42 The ship was sailing ……………… the southern coast of Australia when the storm began.
a) along b) ahead c) awake d) asleep

43 Cabbage is a kind of vegetables that can be eaten ……………… or cooked.
a) tough b) raw c) wild d) domestic

44 According to the law, you have to pay a ……………… if you use your mobile phone while driving.
a) fee b) tax c) fine d) bill

45 The writer ……………… the essay's main arguments in the final paragraph.
a) phrased b) devised c) exclaimed d) summarised

46 Children must be accompanied by a/an ……………… in this museum.
a) colleague b) assistant c) adult d) servant

Expressions, idioms, prepositions, derivatives, synonyms and antonyms *Exercises*

47 The word "upset" is an antonym to the word ....

a) ease b) hurt c) assign d) appoint

48 The word "paraphrase" is similar in meaning to ....

a) examine b) cool c) check d) rephrase

49 American English is slightly different .... British English.

a) in b) about c) with d) to

50 My mother asked me to cut the carrots .... thin slices.

a) into b) down c) up d) away

51 You should always .... these simple rules when using electrical equipment.

a) break b) follow c) ask d) refuse

52 A broken leg won't stop me .... going to my friend's birthday party.

a) in b) at c) from d) on

53 My father used to .... everyone of us a job to do during the holiday.

a) take b) employ c) hire d) give

Previous Exams *Exercises*

54 A .... is someone who produces books, newspapers and magazines. (ث.ع ٢٠١٥)

a) lawyer b) publisher c) pioneer d) driver

55 Some people keep on destroying the environment by throwing factory .... in rivers and seas. (ث.ع ٢٠١٥)

a) waist b) waste c) paste d) haste

56 We ran to the station but it was .... vain. The train had already left. (السودان ٢٠١٩)

a) on b) in c) at d) of

57 I think he is .... You can talk to him. (الأزهر ٢٠١٩)

a) asleep b) awake c) sleepy d) sleeping

58 She finds working with handicapped children .... and rewarding. (الأزهر ٢٠١٩)

a) complicated b) complex c) challenging d) tough

59 Take these pills. They will .... your pain at once. (ث.ع ٢٠١٩)

a) release b) pease c) please d) ease

60 No one is useless in this world as long as he lightens the .... of another. ث.ع ٢٠١٩

a) records b) pleasure c) post d) burdens



Distributives: all, both, half, each, every, either, neither

1 All

e.g. All my hair is still black.
All cats are animals.

- We use all with a singular verb with uncountable nouns, but with a plural verb with countable nouns:

- تستخدم all مع الأسماء غير المعدودة والأسماء المفردة ويتبعها فعل مفرد.
- تستخدم all مع الأسماء الجمع ويتبعها فعل جمع.

1. (All + اسم مفرد + فعل مفرد)
   All of my house has been painted and it looks new.
2. (All + اسم لا يعد + فعل مفرد)
   All the food is in the fridge.
3. (All + اسم جمع + فعل جمع)
   - All students are happy when the vacation comes.
   - All Mona's money is at home, so all her friends are helping her.

2 Both

- Both refers to two people, things or groups. It has a positive meaning and is followed by a plural verb.

- تشير Both إلى شخصين أو شيئين أو مجموعتين. لها معنى الإثبات ويتبعها فعل جمع.

- Both Ahmed's parents are doctors.
- Both of them have clinics.

- ملحوظة: تستخدم all/both بعد v.to be وبعد أي فعل مساعد وقبل الفعل الأساسي .

- They are both/all excited.
- They have all/both passed the final exam.





Either

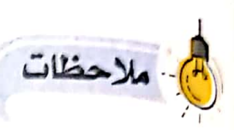
- Either refers to two people, things or groups. It is followed by a singular countable noun.

- تشير either إلى شخصين أو شيئين أو مجموعتين وتتبع باسم مفرد يُعد.

- Either camera gives you a clear photo.
- Either of + plural noun can be followed by a singular or plural verb in the affirmative.

- تتبع either of باسم جمع ولكن الفعل الذى ياتى بعدها يكون مفردًا أو جمعًا.

- Either of these two cameras gives/give you a clear photo.



١- يمكن استخدام either (of) .... not بدلًا من neither (of).

- I watched two matches, but I didn't like either of them.

٢- ويمكن أن تستخدم either فى نهاية الجملة المنفية.

- Ola isn't at school today, and Marwa isn't either.



Neither

- Neither refers to two people, things or groups. It has a negative meaning. It is followed by a singular countable noun.

- تشير Neither إلى شخصين أو شيئين أو مجموعتين. لها معنى النفى وتتبع باسم مفرد يُعد.

- Neither dress is long enough.
- Neither answer is correct.
- Neither of + plural noun can be followed by a singular or plural verb in the affirmative.

- تتبع neither of باسم جمع ولكن الفعل الذى يأتى بعدها يكون مفردًا أو جمعًا.

- Neither of my friends is/are going to join the Faculty of Medicine.

5 Every - Each

- Every and each are used with singular countable nouns.

- نستخدم every و each مع الأسماء المفردة التى تُعد.

- We often use each when we talk about two people or things.

- نستخدم each عندما نتحدث عن شخصين أو شيئين.

- We often use every when we talk about three or more people or things.

- نستخدم every عندما نتحدث عن ثلاثة أو أكثر من الأشخاص أو الأشياء.

- He was holding a pen in each hand.
- Every part of my body hurts after the accident.
- Every student was given a book.
- We use every when we are thinking of people or things together, in a group to mean "all", "everybody" or "everything".

- نستخدم every عندما نفكر فى الأشخاص أو الأشياء معًا، فى مجموعة تعنى «الكل» أو «الجميع» أو «كل شىء».

- We use each when we are thinking of people or things separately, one at a time.

- نستخدم each عندما نفكر فى الأشخاص أو الأشياء بشكل منفصل، كل واحد فى مرة.

- Every student has the right to take 30 days off. (all students)
- The teacher will ask each student in turn to give him/her the oral marks.
- Every and each (one) can be followed by of.
- I have seen all of Ismael Yasin's films and I liked every one of them.
- It was the twins' birthday yesterday and I gave a present to each (one) of them.



Half (of)

-تستخدم half (of) مع الأسماء غير المعدودة والأسماء المفردة ويتبعها فعل مفرد.

-تستخدم half (of) مع الأسماء الجمع ويتبعها فعل جمع.

1. Half (of) + اسم مفرد + فعل مفرد)

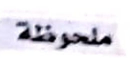
   Half (of) the street has been taken by vendors so cars can't park here.

2. Half (of) + اسم لا يعد + فعل مفرد)

   Half (of) the food was thrown into the rubbish bin.

3. Half (of) + اسم جمع + فعل جمع)

   - Half (of) the students are absent today.
   - Half (of) my friends like tennis.

ملحوظة: لا نستخدم of مع تعبيرات الكميات والمسافات والأطوال والفترات الزمنية.

Half an hour – half a loaf – half a mile – half a dozen

- My house is half a kilometre from here.
- Half a loaf is better than none if you are hungry.

Extra Points

Every - each

- **We use every to show how often something happens.**

- نستخدم every لبيان الأحداث أو الأشياء المتكررة.

- There is a train every twenty minutes.
- I have to attend a meeting every two months.
- **We use every not each with the following words:**

- نستخدم every وليس each مع الكلمات الآتية:

- Almost, nearly, practically and without exception.
- She has invited every person she knows, without exception.

Both .... and

a) Both + فاعل أول + and + فاعل ثان + فعل جمع
- Both Ahmed and his friend are clever doctors.

b) فاعل + فعل + both + مفعول أول and + مفعول ثان
- I play both football and tennis.

Either - Neither

either .... or .... أما .... أو ....

neither .... nor .... لا .... ولا ....

1. a) Either + فاعل أول + or + فاعل ثان + الفعل يتبع الفاعل الثانى
   - Either Ahmed or his friend is going to take me to the Book Fair.
   - Either Ahmed or his friends are going to take me to the Book Fair.

   b) فاعل + فعل + either + مفعول أول + or + مفعول ثان
   - I'll play either football or tennis in the club today.

2. a) Neither + فاعل أول + nor + فاعل ثان + الفعل يتبع الفاعل الثانى
   - Neither Ahmed nor his friend is going to take me to the Book Fair.
   - Neither Ahmed nor his friends are going to take me to the Book Fair.

   b) فاعل + فعل + neither + مفعول أول + nor + مفعول ثان
   - I'll play neither football nor tennis in the club today.

- تعبر neither عن النفى لذلك يأتى الفعل معها مثبتا.

None

- None refers to more than two people or things. It has a negative meaning and takes a verb either in the singular or the plural.

- تشير none إلى أكثر من شخصين أو شيئين ولها معنى النفى وتأخذ الفعل سواء فى صيغة المفرد أو الجمع.

- Medhat, Ayman and Yasser haven't got a car. None of them has/have a car.

All – whole كل – جميع

- I was hungry so I ate all the food. ("the" after "all")
- I was hungry so I ate the whole pie. ("the" before "whole")

Grammar Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It's not good for you to stay in bed .... day. You should get up and do something.
   a) both b) each c) every d) all
2. Atef tried all the three flavours of ice cream and loved .... one of them.
   a) all b) every c) both d) either
3. Hady was really generous to his two nephews; he gave .... of them a gift.
   a) neither b) every c) each d) all
4. .... your teacher or your father will tell you what to do.
   a) Either b) Neither c) All d) Both
5. .... Ahmed nor Omar came to the meeting.
   a) Neither b) Either c) Both d) Each
6. Saber has been brought up by his uncle as .... his parents are dead.
   a) either b) none c) both d) all
7. I invited 20 guests to my party but only .... of them came.
   a) both b) neither c) all d) half
8. We had a great weekend as the weather was perfect .... days.
   a) half b) all c) both d) neither
9. Omar has seen a lot of films this month. He enjoyed .... one of them.
   a) both b) all c) every d) either
10. She bought two new dresses and paid 500 pounds for .... one of them.
    a) each b) every c) both d) either
11. We could stay at the Sheraton Hotel or Nile Hotel. .... place is fine with me.
    a) Neither b) Either c) Both d) Every
12. .... Ahmed nor Khalid drinks tea.
    a) Either b) Both c) All d) Neither
13. .... Judy and her brother are secondary school students.
    a) All b) Either c) Neither d) Both
14. We missed .... of what he said because someone was talking.
    a) half b) neither c) either d) both
15. **A:** There are some very nice clothes in that shop.
    B: Yes, I know but .... of them are very expensive.
    a) both b) none c) all d) neither

16 It's strange to see a woman wearing a ring on .... finger.
a) both b) every c) half d) all

17 The teacher told us to spend five minutes on .... question.
a) either b) all c) each d) both

18 .... my sisters or my brothers are going to visit me the next feast.
a) Either b) Neither c) Both d) All

19 I have got two watches, but .... of them works properly.
a) all b) neither c) both d) either

20 He looked .... ways then crossed the road.
a) all b) every c) half d) both

21 Take a taxi and you will reach the hospital in time. It's about .... a mile from here.
a) both b) half of c) half d) neither

22 .... the students in our class are from Cairo.
a) Every b) Both c) Either d) All

23 Instead of meeting her friends, she preferred to write long letters to .... friend.
a) each b) all c) neither d) both

24 Two men wanted to marry her, but she accepted .... of their offers.
a) all b) neither c) either d) each

25 When she was a child, she was good at .... writing and playing the piano.
a) either b) both c) all d) every

26 She spent about .... of her time writing poems.
a) neither b) both c) half d) either

27 She spent nearly .... her life at home.
a) each b) both c) every d) all

28 The teacher told the class that .... student had done very well that year.
a) every b) all c) either d) both

29 The tour guide gave .... tourist a ticket to enter the museum.
a) all b) both c) half d) each

30 My mother said I could have .... a cheese or a chicken sandwich.
a) both b) neither c) either d) each

31 I was offered tea or coffee, but I had .... of them because I don't like hot drinks.
a) either b) neither c) both d) all

32 I was very hungry, so I had .... the cheese and the chicken sandwiches!
a) both b) neither c) every d) either

33 The cake was cut into six pieces, so three of us ate .... of it and we kept the other three pieces until later.
a) both b) all c) half d) neither

34 .... the students in my class speak English very well.
a) Each b) Both c) Either d) All

35 Tarek loves tennis and watches .... match on television.
a) all b) both c) every d) neither

36 .... of the five tourists from the north of Europe had blond hair.
a) Every b) Both c) Either d) Each

37 We looked at two hotels on the internet and .... of them would be great for a holiday.
a) half b) either c) all d) every

38 There were two photos of me on my cousin's phone but I liked .... of them.
a) neither b) all c) every d) half

39 My sister bought two new skirts and .... of them are long and green.
a) every b) both c) all d) each

40 The film was very boring and .... of the people left before the end.
a) each b) every c) both d) half

41 He was thirsty, so he drank .... the juice.
a) neither b) whole c) every d) all

42 **A:** Which school subject do you think is the most interesting?
B: .... subject is different. I don't think I have a favourite.
a) All b) Both c) Every d) Half

43 **A:** Which member of your family is the best at speaking English?
B: .... of them speaks some English, but my mother is the best!
a) Both b) Each c) All d) Every

44 The event was organised by two people. .... of them is a professional.
a) Every b) All c) Neither d) Half

45 **A:** At a restaurant, would you rather have fish or meat?
B: I like ...., but I usually have chicken.
a) both b) every c) all d) half

46 **A:** How many students in your class live near you?
B: About .... of them are from my village.
a) both b) each c) every d) half

47 A: How did your class do in the exam? B: Luckily, we .... passed.
a) all b) both c) neither d) every

48 She was hungry, so she ate the .... pizza.
a) every b) whole c) both d) all

49 A: Both of these dresses look lovely.
B: Yes, but I think .... of them fits me well.
a) every b) none c) neither d) all

50 Sara and I can go on either Friday or Saturday, but .... of us can go on Sunday.
a) all b) half c) every d) neither

51 I haven't seen .... of those films, so I don't mind which one we go to.
a) any b) both c) no d) neither

52 Neither my friends nor my brother .... to help me with the Maths problem.
a) want b) wants c) are wanting d) is wanting

Previous Exams Exercises

53 .... sport has something special. I don't think I have a favourite. (ث.ع ٢٠١٩)
a) Either b) Every c) All d) Half

54 My school is .... a kilometre from my house. (ث.ع ٢٠١٩ دور ثان)
a) neither b) half of c) half d) either

55 .... of the houses was slightly different. (الأزهر ٢٠١٩)
a) all b) Both c) Some d) Each

Language Functions

Summarising and paraphrasing: التلخيص وإعادة الصياغة:

- What she's trying to say is that ...
- Can you paraphrase/summarise that?
- I think I can summarise the (poem).
- I think that it means ...
- In other words ... .



Skills Exercises

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Egypt is a country with an area of about one million square kilometres. Most of the land is desert. The amount of rain each year is very small. Only 3% of Egypt - the land watered by the River Nile - can be used for farming. Over 90% of the Egyptians live and work in this small part of the country. In the past Egypt grew its own food. Now, it has to import more than half the wheat it needs to feed its people. In 1989, the population of Egypt was already around 55 million. With 3 new babies born every minute and people living longer lives, the population is growing fast - two million new people every year. Now, it is nearly 100 million. As half of all Egyptians are under 20 years of age, the population will continue to grow.

Recently an Egyptian newspaper, wrote a report on what life would be like in the year 2030 if the population continues to grow as fast as it is doing now. In Cairo, people would have to live in small flats and travelling from one side of the city to another would take hours.

To prevent such problems, the government wants people to have smaller families. On television, it shows the ideal family – father, mother and two children. Families will have to get smaller if the report in that newspaper is not to come true.

On the other hand, there is an optimistic thought, which says that Egypt would be an advanced country as the people are considered an advantage not a block on the way of advancement if everyone knows their duties. There are many modern new cities, which would solve the problems of transport and housing.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. How much wheat did Egypt produce in the past?

a) Some of what it needed.
b) All what it needed.
c) None of what it needed.
d) A great deal of what it needed.

2. What do you think of the writer of the newspaper?

a) Brave. b) Pessimistic.
c) Optimistic. d) Liar.



3. **How many members does the ideal family consist of?**

a) Father, mother and a child.

b) Father, mother and two boys.

c) Father, mother and two daughters.

d) Father, mother and two children.

4. **What does the underlined word "it" refer to?**

a) The Nile. b) Rain.

c) The year 2030. d) Population.

B) Answer the following questions:

5. Why do most Egyptians live and work in a very small area? Give two reasons.
6. What are the two elements that make population grow at a high rate?
7. Mention two problems that result from over-population?
8. How do you think we can benefit from the desert? Mention two points.

2 Write an essay of about (180) words the following:

"A famous poet that is important in Arabic poetry."

3 Translation:

A) Translate into Arabic:

1. It is said that poetry is a language in which man explores his own amazement. Perhaps the poet aims at sharing it with his readers.
2. The changes which Egypt has gone through during the past few years proved that we are in need of unity. We need it to succeed in all our national projects.
3. Poetry can give ordinary people the best inspiration and motivation to be better.
4. The basic function of education is to teach children knowledge, values, and pattern of behaviour they will need in the adult world and will move from generation to another.
5. It is known that reading has a great importance as good books are the treasures of human knowledge, experience and wisdom. (الأزهر ٢٠٠٧)
6. The state is taking necessary measures to uproot all forms of corruption to push the wheels of production forward. It is our role to help in this mission. (الأزهر (معدلة) ٢٠١٧)



B) Translate into English:

١- لم تكن إيميلى ديكنسون شخصية اجتماعية حتى إنها قضت معظم حياتها فى المنزل ولكنها كانت تتميز بالإبداع فى شعرها.

٢- لا يميل كثير من الشباب الآن إلى قراءة الشعر أو الروايات مما أدى إلى انخفاض نشرهم؛ ذلك لأنهم يفضلون مشاهدة الأفلام ووسائل الاتصالات الحديثة.

٣- ينبغى علينا بذل المزيد من الجهد لحماية البيئة من التلوث السمعى والبصرى فقد ثبت أن لهما ضررًا لا يقل عن تلوث الماء والهواء. (ث.ع (معدلة) ٢٠١٥)

٤- بسبب نقص إنتاج الطاقة فى مصر يجب علينا ترشيد استهلاكها فى جميع الاستخدامات، كما يجب التوسع فى الطاقة النظيفة مثل طاقة الرياح والطاقة الشمسية.

Enrich your Vocabulary

amazement	دهشة/ذهول	solar	شمسية
corruption	الفساد	treasures	كنوز
measures	إجراءات	uproot	يستأصل
motivation	حافز/دافع	visual	البصرى
noise pollution	التلوث السمعى	wisdom	الحكمة
sociable	اجتماعية		



Open General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Is this cold weather .... for the time of year?
   a) average b) normal
   c) standard d) terrific
2. Readers are invited to send in their .... and suggestions.
   a) recipes b) observations
   c) asides d) comments
3. The man felt a sudden sharp .... in his chest, so he was taken to hospital.
   a) pain b) ache
   c) suffering d) agony
4. The street became .... with the sound of children playing.
   a) dead b) quiet
   c) alive d) flowing
5. The manager has been the .... force behind the project from the beginning.
   a) acting b) moving
   c) stopping d) emotional
6. Our school has won six basketball .... in the local championships.
   a) titles b) names
   c) headings d) tours
7. I asked the electrician to give me a written .... for the job I hired him for.
   a) step b) paraphrase
   c) recipe d) quotation
8. A teacher should try to put the students at .... by being friendly and nice.
   a) ache b) ease
   c) cool d) home
9. Scientists are still .... the treatment for the new virus. They need more time.
   a) attaining b) describing
   c) perfecting d) expecting
10. The team is expected to be better as it has a lot of .... talent who needed time to gain experience.
    a) designed b) developed
    c) cooked d) raw

11 Ibrahim .... for the company since he left university.
a) was working b) is working
c) works d) has been working

12 The supermarket .... at 10:00 in the morning every day.
a) is opening b) opens
c) open d) opened

13 There's no point leaving now; the film .... by the time we reach the cinema.
a) was starting b) going to start
c) will have started d) had started

14 This cake .... wonderful!
a) tastes b) is tasting
c) taste d) tasteful

15 My father didn't .... live in a big city.
a) used to b) use to
c) used d) get used to

16 I don't think that Samy has .... travelled on a plane.
a) yet b) never
c) still d) ever

17 Tamer .... to be falling asleep at his desk.
a) appears b) was appearing
c) is appearing d) appear

18 Jehan .... already cleaned the kitchen by the time her mother got home.
a) has b) was
c) had d) is

19 He .... a bath when the doorbell rang.
a) had b) is having
c) has d) was having

20 Ramy is my closest friend. We .... each other for a long time.
a) have been knowing b) have known
c) knew d) know

Test 4 Based on Unit 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. To solve the economic problem, ... citizen must pay taxes.
   a) either b) all c) every d) both
2. The writer's book about his illness is so .... that most people cry while reading it.
   a) moving b) impressive c) effective d) pleasing
3. It's strange to see a man wearing a watch on .... hand.
   a) every b) each c) all d) both
4. Teaching young children is considered a .... and rewarding job.
   a) challenge b) challenged c) challenging d) unchallengeable
5. I looked at two watches, but I didn't buy .... of them.
   a) half b) every c) neither d) either
6. Assuit is not far from Sohag, so you can easily visit .... of them in a day.
   a) all b) neither c) both d) half
7. Her voice was full of .... when she talked about her dead husband.
   a) silence b) joy c) pleasure d) emotion
8. It was a difficult lesson so only .... the students understood it.
   a) all b) half c) both d) every
9. I asked my friend about the .... of this week's writing as I was absent.
   a) address b) title c) speech d) text
10. Sara has three sisters, ... of them look like her.
    a) half b) both c) every d) all
11. .... member of the football team must sign a contract.
    a) Either b) Both c) Each d) All
12. My uncle was .... after the operation on his heart, but he is getting better.
    a) dead b) unconscious c) useless d) deceased
13. I need to be good at .... speaking and writing English to get the job.
    a) all b) either c) both d) neither
14. I've never seen such a .... film in my whole life.
    a) terrify b) terrifying c) terrified d) terrifies

- Don't waste your time .... computer games all day.
  a) playing b) to play c) play d) plays
- All the crew's aim is to spend several days ashore. Ashore here means ....
  a) by ship b) on land c) by air d) on foot

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Sara was not happy. She loved all of her toys! Her mother sat down with her in front of her toy chest. They looked through the toys one at a time. Most of the toys Sara wanted to keep. Her mother put them in the "keep" pile. When they got about half way through the toy box, Sara saw one stuffed animal that she had forgotten about.

"Oh, look at how cute he is! Keep him, please," she told her mother.

"Sara, you forgot about him. Are you sure you will really play with him again? What if you get a new stuffed animal that you like better?" Mother asked.

"Well, now I remember him. I will play with him."

"That's fine, but there might be someone else out there who would love to have him. Some kids don't have any stuffed animals," said Mother. Sara said she would decide later.

When they were finished, there was a very large "keep" pile, and some toys in the "donate" and "maybe" piles. Mother and Sara cleaned the "maybe" and "donate" toys, then put them in bags. They went to a place where kids lived who didn't have homes, and asked the workers if they could hand out toys. Seeing the kids' smiles made Sara so happy, and a lot of kids said this was the only toy they had. Sara turned to her mother and asked if they could get the "maybe" bag out of the car. The other kids needed those toys more than she did! Sara felt so great that her choice made the other kids so happy.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What did Sara's mother tell her before her coming birthday?

a) To find a room for her new toys.
b) To find a place for her new toys.
c) To find a hotel for her new toys.
d) To find a party for her new toys.

2. What did Sara's mother mean by "by choosing some old toys to give away."

a) Sell. b) Put in the rubbish bin.
c) Donate. d) Lend.

3. **Why did Sara and her mother clean the "maybe" and "donate" toys, and put them in bags?**
   a) To give them to the homeless.
   b) To sell them in the market.
   c) To replace them with other toys.
   d) To give them to the workers.
4. **What is the best title for the passage?**
   a) Greed. b) Taking.
   c) Selfishness. d) Giving.

B) Answer the following questions:

5. What are the two piles chosen to be given to the homeless?
6. Who went to a place where kids who didn't have homes lived?
7. What do you think of Sara's choice at the end? Why? Why not?
8. If you were in Sara's place, what would you do? Why?

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

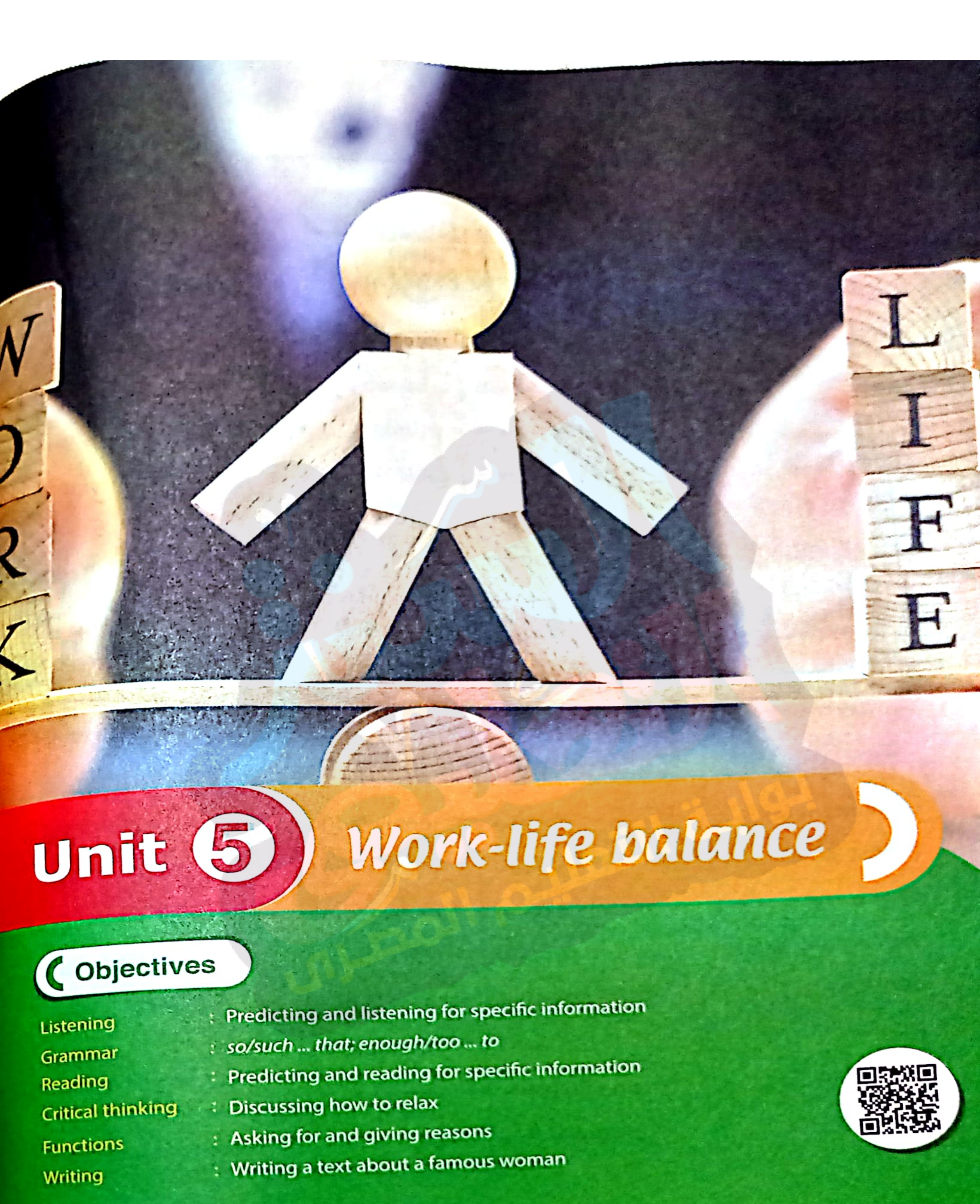
Poetry offers us the opportunity to express great emotions. As well as helping us understand and appreciate the world around us, it changes hate to love and violence to mercy and pity.

B) Translate into English:

يجب أن يدرك الآباء أن الأطفال يحتاجون إلى الحب والحنان وليس النقد الدائم فهم دائمًا في حاجة ماسة إلى النصح والإرشاد لأن خبراتهم في الحياة قليلة.

4 Write an essay of about (180) words on the following:

The role we can play to share in the progress of our country.



Unit 5 Work-life balance

Objectives

- Listening : Predicting and listening for specific information
- Grammar : *so/such ... that; enough/too ... to*
- Reading : Predicting and reading for specific information
- Critical thinking : Discussing how to relax
- Functions : Asking for and giving reasons
- Writing : Writing a text about a famous woman



Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

account (n)	حساب
balance (n) (v) (d)	توازن/يوازن بين
client (n)	عميل
deadline (n)	الموعد النهائى (المحدد)
freelance (adj)	حر/مستقل
lack (v) (ed) (n)	ينقصه/نقص
limit (v) (ed) (n)	يحدد/حد
organisation (n)	منظمة
regular (adj)	منتظم
separate (v) (d) (adj)	يفصل/منفصل
sociable (adj)	اجتماعى
stress (n)	ضغط/توتر
stressful (adj)	مُجهِد
suffer (v) (ed)	يعانى
take off (v)	يتغيب عن العمل
take on (v)	يتحمل مسئولية/يقبل عملًا
task (n)	مهمة

Vocabulary on Listening

accountant (n)	محاسب
almost (adv)	تقريبًا
carry on (v)	يستمر فى
comfortably (adv)	بشكل مريح
decision (n)	قرار
designer (n)	مصمم
exactly (adv)	بالضبط
include (v) (d)	يشمل/يتضمن
lonely (adj)	وحيد
manage (v) (d)	يدير
manager (n)	مدير
office (n) (adj)	مكتب/مكتبى
provide (v) (d)	يزود/يوفر
timetable (n)	جدول مواعيد
working hour (n)	ساعة عمل

Vocabulary on Reading

Word	Meaning
activity (n)	نشاط
allow (v) (ed)	يسمح
athlete (n)	رياضي
available (adj)	متوفر
carry around (v) (ied)	يتنقل بـ/يحمل معه
competition (n)	مسابقة
contact (v) (ed) (n)	يتصل/اتصال
exhausted (adj)	مرهق
flexible (adj)	مرن
focus (v) (ed) (n)	يركز/تركيز
particular (adj)	خاص/محدد
period (n)	فترة
quality (n)	صفة/جودة
quality time	وقت ممتع (تمضيه مع العائلة)
relax (v) (ed)	يسترخى/يستريح
rest (n) (v) (ed)	راحة/يرتاح

Critical Thinking, Communication & Workbook Vocabulary

Word	Meaning
add (v) (ed)	يضيف
admire (v) (d)	يعجب بـ
alarm (n)	إنذار/منبه
briefly (adv)	باختصار
cost (v) (n)	يتكلف/تكلفة
fear (n) (v) (ed)	خوف/يخشى
firefighter (n)	رجل إطفاء
graduate (n)	خريج
gym (n)	صالة ألعاب
healthy (adj)	صحى/بصحة جيدة
independently (adv)	باستقلال
interrupt (v) (ed)	يقاطع/يعترض
ladder (n)	سلم متنقل
mainly (adv)	أساسًا
occupation (n)	وظيفة
pessimistic (adj)	متشائم
powerful (adj)	قوى
purpose (n)	غرض
recipe (n)	وصفة (طعام)
record (n) (v) (ed)	سجل/يسجل
repeated (adj)	مكرر
service (n)	خدمة





spectator (n)	متفرج	unknown (adj)	غير معروف
thought (n)	فكرة/رأى	weight-lifting (n)	رفع الأثقال
tips (n)	تلميحات/نصائح	well-known (adj)	معروف/مشهور
United Nations (n)	الأمم المتحدة		

Focus on Vocabulary

Word	Definition
accounts الحسابات	a record of the money that a person or company has received and spent
client عميل	someone who pays a person or organisation for work or advice
deadline الموعد النهائى (المحدد)	a date of time by which you must finish something
freelance (adj) حر/مستقل	working independently for several different companies
organisation منظمة	an organised group of people such as a business
regular منتظم	repeated, planned for the same time every day
separate يفصل	to divide into two or more parts
sociable اجتماعى	friendly, likes to be with other people
stress ضغط/توتر	a continuous feeling of worry about work or your personal life that stops you from relaxing
take on يتحمل مسئولية/يقبل عمل	start doing or be responsible for
task مهمة	a piece of work that someone has to do



Expressions & Idioms

according to	طبقا لـ	go running	يمارس الجرى
all over the world	فى كل أنحاء العالم	have an illness	يعانى من مرض
ask ... for advice	يطلب النصيحة من	make a difficult decision	يتخذ قرارا صعبا
at all times	فى جميع الأوقات	meet the deadlines	يلبى المواعيد النهائية
at the end	فى النهاية	on your own	بمفردك
feel calm	يشعر بالهدوء	take breaks	يأخذ فترات راحة

Phrases & Prepositions

available for	متوفر لـ	responsible for	مسئول عن
dislike about	يكره عن	separate from	يفصل عن
focus on	يركز على	suffer from	يعانى من
remind of	يذكر بـ	train for	يتدرب من أجل

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
add	يضيف	addition	إضافة	additional	إضافى
balance	يوازن بين	balance	توازن	balanced	متوازن
decide	يقرر	decision	قرار	decisive	حاسم
exhaust	يرهق	exhaustion	إرهاق	exhausted	مرهق
limit	يحد	limit	حد	limited	محدود
manage	يدير	management	إدارة	managerial	إدارى
relax	يسترخى/يستريح	relaxation	راحة/استرخاء	relaxing relaxed	مريح مسترخٍ



Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
activity	نشاط	movement	idleness	كسل/عدم حركة
balance	توازن	harmony	imbalance	عدم توازن
freelance	حر/مستقل	self-employed	employed	موظف
lack	نقص	absence	abundance	غزارة
limit	يحدد	restrict	extend	يمد/يوسع
manage	يدير	run	mismanage	يسيء الإدارة
provide	يزود/يوفر	supply	deprive	يحرم
regular	منتظم	constant	irregular	غير منتظم
separate	يفصل	detach	attach	يصل
sociable	اجتماعي	outgoing	unsociable	غير اجتماعي
stressful	مجهد	troublesome	easy	مستريح
suffer	يعاني	endure	resist	يقاوم

Important Language Notes

make & do & get

make — يصنع/يعمل (يستخدم للتعبير عن إنتاج/صنع/بناء شيء)

- The carpenter made us a good table for the meeting room.

do — يفعل/يعمل (يستخدم للتعبير عن أداء عمل/مهمة/أنشطة)

- We have to do a lot of activities to get good marks at school.

get — يحصل على/يتسلم (يستخدم للتعبير عن القدرة على الحصول على شيء أو تسلمه)

- He works overtime to get money for his big family.






Words with related meaning

- كثير من الكلمات والتعبيرات فى اللغة الإنجليزية تستخدم بمعانى متقاربة مع فارق بسيط فى المعنى مثل:

suffer	يعانى (من شىء غالبًا سيئ)	feel	يشعر (بألم/حزن/فرح)
exercise	تمرين (روتينى للحفاظ على الصحة واللياقة)	training	تدريب (للقوة أو المشاركة فى مسابقة)
at work	قائم بالعمل/فى فترة العمل	available for work	متوفر (مؤهل) للعمل أو التوظيف
tell	يخبر	remind	يذكر

take off

- يستخدم (take off) بمعانٍ مختلفة مثل:

يتغيب عن العمل
- I can't take off any time this week.

يخلع ملابسه
- It was hot so I took off my jacket.

تقلع (طائرة)
- The plane took off at half past four.

ينجح
- Her sports career took off after she won the competition.

- لاحظ أيضًا المعانى التالية مع الفعل (take):

take ... back	يُرجع/يذكر بالماضى	take apart	يفصل
take in	يستضيف/يفهم/يخدع	take down	يدون
take over	يتولى عمل/يسيطر على	take out	يخرج/يصطحب للخارج/يدمر
take to	يعتاد على/ينجذب إلى	take through	يشرح/يفسر

Other Language Notes



include	contain	consist	enclose

include — يتضمن/يشمل/يضم (خاصة فى القوائم)
- The price includes flights and accommodation.

contain — يحتوى على (داخل شىء)
- There were four or five boxes containing toys and books.

consist (of) — يتكون من
- My breakfast consists of a piece of cake and a cup of tea.

enclose — يرفق (بداخل خطاب/طرد مثلًا) يحيط بسور
- He sent me a letter and enclosed his photo with it.
- The swimming pool was enclosed by a high fence.

allow **let**

يسمح/يدع

allow + مفعول + to + inf.

يسمح/يدع (بعدها المصدر)

- She only allows the children to watch television at weekends.

let + مفعول + inf.

- He lets me use the computer.

limit **mark**

يحدد/يقصر (يضع حدًا لـ)

limit

- The government is considering a decision to limit imports of foreign cars.

mark

١- يحدد (على خريطة/كتاب)

٢- يحدد/يميز

- He had marked the route on the map in red.
- Cairo is marked by the Egyptian Museum and Cairo Tower.

sociable **social**

sociable

اجتماعى (شخص يتعامل مع الآخرين بسهولة)

- Our new neighbours are a pleasant, sociable couple who like parties and talking to people.

social

اجتماعى (خاص بالمجتمع)

- There should be serious attention to our social problems, such as unemployment and crime.

freelance **free**

freelance

حر/مستقل (شخص يعمل عملًا حرًا غير مرتبط بشركة أو عميل واحد فقط)

- My brother works as a freelance computer programmer working from home.

free

١- حر (غير مقيد)

٢- مجانى

- You are free to come and go as you please.
- The swimming pool is free for hotel guests.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Samy was taking .... his shirt when the phone rang.
   a) in b) off c) back d) over
2. This dictionary .... both British and American spellings of words.
   a) includes b) consists c) encloses d) entails
3. Michael's mum .... him stay up late at the weekends.
   a) allows b) advises c) discourages d) lets
4. We .... the route on the map before we started the trip.
   a) limited b) drawn c) marked d) devised
5. My cousin is very ....; he likes parties and outdoor life.
   a) social b) sociable c) shy d) ashamed
6. I just wanted to ask you if you're .... this afternoon.
   a) free b) freelance c) freely d) freeing
7. My brother went to the shop to .... some milk.
   a) do b) make c) get d) win
8. The runner hurt his knee in a/an .... session last Friday.
   a) training b) exercise c) game d) match
9. I spent most of my time on the beach watching the fishermen .... work.
   a) about b) in c) for d) at
10. Our house has a small garden, ... by a brick wall.
    a) included b) consisted c) enclosed d) contained

Listening Text

Narrator : 1

Speaker 1: I'm a freelance[1] writer. I have just had my first child, so I'm too busy to go to work every day. What I like about freelance work is that you can choose how much work you want to do. Before my son was born, I worked very hard. Sometimes I worked so hard that I had to work until late at night. Now, I'm only doing a few hours of work a day. Later, as my son gets older, I'll increase the amount of work that I do. The problem with being a freelance worker is that you don't always get regular[2] work. There are times when you can't work hard enough to live comfortably. Also, it can be hard to make money and look after my family.



(1) حر/مستقل

(2) منتظم

(3) المواعيد النهائية

Narrator : 2

Speaker 2: When I was younger, I worked such long hours that I didn't have any time to myself. The best thing about freelance work is that you can choose your working hours. When you don't have to go to an office each day, you can manage your time. Because you're working for yourself, you can make your own timetable. But of course it is very important that you get the work done on time. You must meet the deadlines[3].

Narrator : 3

Speaker 3: When I moved away from the city I was working in, I had to make a difficult decision: either to find a new job, or to carry on working for the same company, but freelance. I'm a book designer, so my job is one which can be done almost anywhere. All I need is a computer and the internet, and I can do my job wherever I want to. I need to travel to meetings, but I can take my work with me. When you're a freelance worker, you can choose where you want to do your job.

Narrator : 4

Speaker 4: I'm a freelance project manager for a big organisation[4]. I work on lots of different projects. The best thing about working freelance is that I can choose exactly which projects to take on. I find my own clients[5], so I usually look for the ones that provide the most interesting projects. The disadvantage of this is that you can't always find new clients to work with when you are freelance. If you are working for an organisation, they find the clients for you.

(4) منظمة
(5) عملاء
(6) اجتماعي
(7) حسابات

Narrator : 5

Speaker 5: I'm a freelance accountant. I like my job, but it sometimes gets lonely working on your own. It is more sociable[6] when you are working in an office. Also, freelance workers have to do their own accounts[7]! For an accountant that's not a problem, but I know other freelance workers who find doing their job and doing their accounts is too difficult for them to do on their own.

Reading Text

Finding a balance





(A) Separate work from home.

It is important for people to separate[1] their work life from their home life. At the end of the work day, people should focus[2] on the fact that this is also the end of that activity or task[3]. Mothers and fathers both often need to work, but they have to balance their family and work. Parents who work should make sure that they spend enough quality time with their children.

(1) يفصل
(2) يركز
(3) مهمة

(B) Don't carry work around.

Many people find it difficult to get the balance[4] right between their work and their free time. Modern technology means that some people can be at work wherever they are. People can carry laptops and phones with them at all times which means that they can read their emails even in their free time. This allows many people to have more flexible working hours or to work from home. The problem is that some companies find it so easy to contact people that they expect them to be available for work all the time. Even people who are relaxing at home may get an important call from work that they have to answer.

(4) توازن
(5) يعانى من
(6) ضغط/توتر
(7) نقص
(8) يحدد
(9) يتغيب عن
(10) مجهد

(C) Take a break.

Although most workers enjoy what they do, people need rest as well. Some people work such long hours that they may suffer from[5] stress[6]. This can lead to a lack[7] of sleep and feeling exhausted at work. People should remember that athletes who train for a competition always take breaks, so why should they not do the same from work? A break can also help to limit[8] the number of days they need to take off[9] because of illness.

(D) Ask for help.

Everyone has times when work can be difficult. If you have a problem at work, ask your manager for advice. He or she should be able to help you. This is often the best way out of stressful[10] situations. It is part of a manager's job to help people with their problems.

Notes on some sentences from (Listening & Reading) texts

1 What I like about freelance work is that you can choose how much work you want to do.

- تستخدم (What) هنا كأداة ربط وليس كأداة استفهام لذلك لم يتبعها فعل مساعد.

2 Later, as my son gets older, I'll increase the amount of work that I do.

- تستخدم (as) هنا كأداة ربط بمعنى (بينما أو لأن) ولأنها تعبر عن المستقبل فإن قاعدتها كالتالى:

As ⟶ مضارع بسيط ⟶ مستقبل

3 .... find doing their job and doing their accounts is too difficult for them to do on their own.



- لاحظ استخدام جملة كاملة فى هذا التعبير بعد الفعل (find) بمعنى (يكتشف) كما يمكن أن يتبعها صيغة مختلفة.

My grandfather now finds walking very difficult.

4 Mothers and fathers both often need to work, but they have to balance their family life and work.
Many people find it difficult to get the balance right between their work and their free time.
- كلمة (balance) تستخدم كفعل ولا تحتاج حرف جر لأن معناها (يوازن بين) أما إذا استخدمت كاسم فنستخدم حرف جر بعدها كما فى الجملة الثانية باستخدام (between).

5 Everyone has times when work can be difficult.
- كلمة (times) تستخدم جمعًا هكذا بمعنى مرات أو أوقات محددة أو مميزة.

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The company's .... show that we made a good profit this year:
   a) skills b) labels c) accounts d) loses
2. The young man is trying to earn a living as a .... designer working with many publishers.
   a) freelance b) free c) busy d) vacant
3. Doctors say that .... exercise is important for good health.
   a) original b) regular c) dull d) custom
4. It is believed that tiredness and worry are two of the most common symptoms of ....
   a) press b) breath c) stress d) activity
5. The manager agreed to extend the .... of the new project by two weeks.
   a) end line b) speed line c) start line d) deadline
6. The official apologized for the client as he doesn't have time to .... any new job right now.
   a) take off b) take on c) take in d) take down
7. We haven't .... any time off since last summer. We are working very hard.
   a) taken b) given c) done d) made
8. The National Bank opened a new branch to serve .... in Helwan.
   a) comments b) replacements c) sales d) clients
9. Our new neighbours are .... people who enjoy having parties.
   a) sociable b) social c) ambiguous d) dull
10. El Orman is a famous non-governmental charitable .... that is mainly concerned with helping the poor.
   a) company b) department c) organisation d) section



- The new park is .... from the nearby hospital by a tall fence.
  a) separated b) ignored c) divided d) shared
- The economic depression was a .... time for all of the people in the country.
  a) stress b) stressed c) stressing d) stressful
- It can be hard to find the right .... between advising your children and controlling them.
  a) account b) balance c) scale d) weight
- The computer programmer has the difficult .... of organising the information.
  a) task b) profession c) position d) work
- Most new parents complain about .... of sleep because of their babies.
  a) leak b) lack c) lake d) leaking
- Experts believe that we should try to .... the children's use of social media. Some of them are harmful.
  a) limit b) mark c) increase d) develop
- The channel is planning to .... a T.V. programme about the young writer who has just died in an accident.
  a) make b) do c) get d) run
- We all should .... something to help the victims of war in Syria.
  a) make b) do c) get d) run
- We had to stop and .... some petrol on our way to Alexandria.
  a) make b) do c) get d) run
- The politician says he needs the notes to .... him what to say.
  a) tell b) remember c) remind d) forget
- The footballer had an ankle injury during .... this week, so he can't play the next match.
  a) lecture b) exercise c) training d) scene
- Experts say that you can have some health problems if you don't have enough physical ....
  a) competition b) exercise c) race d) camping
- The patient .... from the severe side effects of the treatment, but there is no other way.
  a) feels b) fears c) suffers d) astonishes
- The homeless boy .... cold and completely miserable living in the street.
  a) suffered b) feared c) relaxed d) felt
- The restaurant has become well-known under the new ....
  a) management b) excitement c) section d) organisation
- Universities .... the country with highly qualified young people.
  a) offer b) provide c) introduce d) give



7. The price of the holiday .... flight, hotel and taxes.
a) consists b) encloses c) includes d) contains

8. I'm sure that my father won't .... me go to Luxor and Aswan alone.
a) license b) permit c) allow d) let

9. All hotel guests are asked to give their names, addresses and ....
a) money b) occupations c) children d) cars

10. A journey on the underground .... at least three pounds.
a) costs b) pays c) takes d) gives

11. The referees .... the time of each competitor to declare the winner.
a) recorded b) set c) broke d) spoke

12. The hospital .... the number of visitors a patient can have.
a) recognises b) marks c) identifies d) limits

13. You can .... the computer company for advice by phone or email.
a) contact b) conduct c) connect d) communicate

14. The manager said that we would .... on three main topics at the conference.
a) affect b) neglect c) focus d) tell

15. The final match of the cup was watched by over 50,000 ....
a) bands b) spectators c) gangs d) concerts

16. I was still asleep when the .... clock went off.
a) arm b) fire c) smoke d) alarm

17. At our bank, we insist on high standards of customer ....
a) service b) task c) sale d) product

18. Father always tells us not to .... him while he's working.
a) admit b) interrupt c) neglect d) corrupt

19. Could you give me the .... for that chocolate cake?
a) list b) remark c) recipe d) recall

20. One of the electricians fell off a .... and broke his leg while fixing the ceiling lights.
a) ladder b) stair c) step d) lift

21. .... is the sport of carrying specially shaped pieces of metal that weigh an exact amount.
a) Golf b) Boxing c) Wrestling d) Weightlifting

22. It took ten .... over two hours to put out the fire.
a) doctors b) detectives c) firefighters d) inspectors

43 My doctor advised me to go to the .... as often as I can to lose weight.
a) gem b) gym c) pitch d) court

44 I always spend enough .... time with my children at weekends.
a) quantity b) press c) quality d) busy

45 This week's magazine has some .... on healthy eating.
a) taps b) tapes c) tops d) tips

46 Teachers and students are given out copies of the new .... on the first school day.
a) column b) timetable c) system d) lesson

47 The worker .... some water to the paint to make it thinner.
a) added b) took c) removed d) developed

48 One of the advantages of this job is the .... working hours.
a) rough b) tough c) strict d) flexible

49 World .... are honoured for winning medals in the Olympic Games.
a) fans b) spectators c) athletes d) gamers

50 The .... of this dictionary is to help Chinese students who learn English.
a) conclusion b) purpose c) cover d) result

51 We all .... the way our neighbour has brought up the children very well.
a) oppose b) hate c) admire d) disapprove

Expressions, idioms, prepositions, derivatives, synonyms and antonyms *EXercises*

52 The noun "harmony" is a synonym to the noun ....
a) puzzle b) decision c) balance d) debate

53 He felt very .... after his holiday. He had had a really lovely time.
a) relax b) relaxation c) relaxed d) relaxing

54 Everyone's working extremely hard to .... the deadline of the project.
a) meet b) see c) get d) make

55 The word "idleness" is an antonym to the word ....
a) laziness b) activity c) argument d) deal

56 The government should ....a difficult decision about the new law this week.
a) refuse b) design c) do d) make

57 The new computer company is suffering .... a shortage of skilled staff.
a) in b) from c) of d) at

58 The verb "extend" can be the opposite to the "verb" ....
a) limit b) expand c) increase d) accept

59 In this scene, the camera focuses .... the actor's face.
a) in b) of c) on d) with

60 We'll .... a short break for lunch, then start again at two o'clock.
a) take b) give c) refuse d) make

61 The verb "provide" is similar in meaning to ....
a) break b) protect c) supply d) prohibit

62 The civil engineers are already .... work on the new project.
a) for b) at c) with d) of

63 Unfortunately, there is no money available .... the new library.
a) in b) for c) at d) on

64 Time .... is very important if you want to succeed in your study and work.
a) manage b) manger c) management d) managerial

65 After the climb, all the climbers were really ....
a) exhaust b) exhausted c) exhausting d) exhaustion

Previous Exams *Exercises*

66 She has .... from nightmares since the accident. (الأزهر ٢٠١٧)
a) suffered b) endured c) tolerated d) affected

67 It is necessary for working mothers to spend more .... time with their children every day. (ث.ع ٢٠١٩)
a) cruelty b) mentality c) equality d) quality

68 It is important for people to .... their work life from their home life. (السودان ٢٠١٩)
a) separate b) mix c) join d) include

69 My father always says that we should never .... one while one is talking. (السودان ٢٠١٩)
a) cut b) talk c) speak d) interrupt

70 The store always takes .... extra sales assistants for Christmas period. (الأزهر ٢٠١٩)
a) on b) in c) off d) up



Grammar

so/such .... that; enough/too .... to

- We use *so or such .... that and enough/too .... to* to express result.

- نستخدم هذه القاعدة للتعبير عن النتيجة.

1 so + adjective/adverb + that   جدًا .... لدرجة أن

- We use so before an adjective (without a noun) or an adverb:

- تستخدم so قبل الصفة بدون اسم وقبل الحال أيضًا.

- That cake is so nice that I'll have another one!
- They walked so slowly that they missed the train.

2 such + adjective + noun + that   جدًا .... لدرجة أن

a) such a/an + adjective + singular countable noun.

- إذا جاء بعد such أداة النكرة a/an فيكون الاسم الذى بعد الصفة مفردًا معدودًا.

- It was such a useful book that I read it twice.
- It has been such a bad flight that we'll never forget it.

b) such + adjective + plural/uncountable noun.

- إذا جاء بعد such اسم جمع أو اسم مفرد لا يعد لا نستخدم a ولا an.

- It was such nice weather that we went to the park.
- They were such cheap books that I bought them all.

3 Adjective/adverb + enough to + inf.   بدرجة كافية

We use adjective/adverb + enough + to + infinitive to mean as much or as many as necessary. It usually has a positive meaning:

- نستخدم قبل enough صفة أو حالًا ومعناها بدرجة كافية للموقف الذى فيه.

- Hamdi is tall and fast enough to be very good at basketball.
- Hamdi is clever enough to answer the difficult questions.
- The man spoke clearly enough to make it easy for us to understand.



ملحوظة

الصفة التى تكون قبل enough يكون لها معنى إيجابى خاص بجملتها فالصفة small صفة سلبية فى أكثر الأوقات لكن يمكن أن تأتى إيجابية فى جملة مثل

- The boy was small enough to go through the window to put out the fire.

too + adjective/adverb + to + inf. جدًا .... لدرجة ألا

We use too + adjective/adverb + to + infinitive to mean more than is wanted or necessary:

- تعطى too معنى الزيادة عن الحد الضرورى أو المطلوب.

- The sea is too cold to swim in.
- The coffee was too hot to drink.

ملحوظة

- يمكن أن نقول إن الصفة تكون سلبية أو إيجابية بالنسبة لمعنى الجملة.

- Ali is too short to touch the ceiling.

- هنا على ليس قصيرًا ولكن السقف عالٍ جدًا فتعتبر الصفة سلبية بالنسبة لمعنى الجملة.

- Ali isn't tall enough to touch the ceiling.

- الصفة tall صفة إيجابية فى أكثر الأحوال ولكن هنا تعطى معنى سلبيًا.

Extra Points

1) so/much/little + uncountable noun + that
so many/few + plural noun + that

- من المفترض إذا جاءت صفة واسم نستخدم such ولكن الصيغة السابقة تأخذ so.

- There is so much traffic that we won't be on time.
- He made so many mistakes that he failed.

2) such a lot of + plural/uncountable nouns

- He has such a lot of money that he doesn't know what to do with it.

3) so + adjective + a/an + noun = such a/an + adjective + noun
too + adjective + a/an + noun:

- يمكن استخدام so ثم الصفة وبعد ذلك a/an ثم الاسم وهذا ليس شائعًا كثيرًا.

- It was so nice a day that we went to the beach.
- I hope you haven't had too tiring a day.

4) enough + noun

- يستخدم الاسم بعد enough لبيان الكفاية من الشىء.

- There is enough sugar to make a cup of tea.

5) too

- تستخدم too للعطف فى نهاية الجملة المثبتة بمعنى أيضًا.

- My father is a teacher and my brother is, too.

6) So + صفة + فعل مساعد + فاعل + that ....
Such + اسم موصوف + فعل مساعد + فاعل + that ....

- يمكن البداية بـ: صفة + so أو اسم موصوف + such وهنا يتقدم الفعل المساعد على الفاعل

- So clever is Ahmed that all his teachers are pleased with him.
- Such an easy lesson was it that all students understood it.



Grammar Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It was .... interesting book that I couldn't put it down.
   a) such a b) so c) too d) such an
2. They are .... good friends that they have never had an argument.
   a) such a b) such c) so d) enough
3. When I've finished painting the bathroom, I'm going to do the kitchen, ...
   a) such b) so c) too d) enough
4. There are .... few wolves left that we have to protect them.
   a) so b) such c) such a d) enough
5. She has reached the age of 22. She is .... to decide for herself.
   a) such old b) so old c) too old d) old enough
6. It was .... expensive piece of jewellery that it was kept in a safe.
   a) such a b) such an c) such d) so
7. It's .... nice weather! Do you want to go for a walk?
   a) so b) such an c) such d) too
8. The programme had been .... organised that it finished in time without delay.
   a) so b) such c) enough d) too
9. He wasn't .... to face all his responsibilities.
   a) too brave b) brave enough c) so brave d) such brave
10. It was .... for the doctor to do anything. The patient had died.
    a) so late b) late enough c) such late d) too late
11. He speaks .... quickly that I can't understand him.
    a) so b) such c) enough d) too
12. It was .... violent match that the referee sent off three players.
    a) too b) such a c) such d) so
13. She's got .... many dresses that she can't decide which one to put on.
    a) such b) enough c) too d) so
14. Belal is .... to carry the table.
    a) so strong b) too strong c) strong enough d) enough strong
15. Amr is .... to be a basketball player.
    a) tall enough b) too tall c) so tall d) such tall

16 There were .... many people at the fast-food restaurant that they had to wait in a queue.
a) such b) so c) too d) enough

17 It is .... stormy weather that the plane is delayed.
a) too b) so c) such a d) such

18 Shady isn't .... to join the Faculty of Medicine.
a) too clever b) clever enough c) so clever d) enough clever

19 It's .... noisy for me to do my homework.
a) such b) so c) too d) enough

20 Omar looks .... to do any further work.
a) exhausted enough b) so exhausted c) very exhausted d) too exhausted

21 It was .... cold that we couldn't feel our fingers.
a) so b) too c) enough d) such a

22 Our teacher has .... voice that every student can hear what he says.
a) so loud b) such a loud c) enough d) too loud

23 All of us are .... to see over the wall.
a) so short b) short enough c) too short d) enough short

24 Tarek is .... friendly person that everyone likes him.
a) so a b) so c) such d) such a

25 Sometimes I worked .... hard that I had to work until late at night.
a) too b) enough c) so d) such

26 There are times when you can't work .... to live comfortably.
a) hard enough b) too hard c) such hard d) enough hard

27 I worked .... long hours that I didn't have any time to myself.
a) too b) so c) such a d) such

28 Other freelance workers find doing their accounts .... difficult for them to do on their own.
a) so b) too c) enough d) such

29 The exercise was .... easy that I finished it in two minutes.
a) too b) such c) so d) enough

30 Rami is .... to make very few mistakes.
a) careful enough b) too careful c) so careful d) enough careful

31 The question is .... for the little boy to answer.
a) difficult enough b) too difficult c) so difficult d) such difficult

- It's .... amazing play that you can't miss it.
  a) so b) such c) such a d) such an
- They are .... long questions that we don't have time to answer them all.
  a) such b) so c) such a d) enough
- It was not .... to see any stars in the sky.
  a) so dark b) too dark c) dark enough d) enough dark
- The food in that restaurant is .... that we go every week.
  a) such good b) good enough c) too good d) so good
- It was .... long game that we didn't finish it until ten o'clock!
  a) such b) such a c) so d) enough
- That salad was .... nice that I'll ask the restaurant for the recipe.
  a) so b) such c) such a d) enough
- The stadium is .... to hold 50,000 spectators.
  a) enough big b) big enough c) too big d) so big
- Today is much .... hot to play tennis outside.
  a) such a b) enough c) so d) too
- Elephants are .... powerful that they can push over trees.
  a) enough b) too c) so d) such
- This is .... old tree that it is amazing it is still alive.
  a) such an b) such a c) such d) so
- Nobody has been to the top of this mountain because it is .... dangerous to climb.
  a) so b) too c) enough d) such
- I wanted to buy a new phone but it was too expensive .... me to buy.
  a) too b) for c) to d) that
- Ola is .... intelligent that she passed the exam easily.
  a) so b) too c) enough d) such an
- Hamdi is .... strong man that he is very good at weightlifting.
  a) such b) such a c) so d) enough
- Hana did not feel .... to come to school.
  a) so well b) too well c) enough well d) well enough
- He's got .... little patience with children that he can't be a teacher.
  a) such b) so c) such a d) enough
- My brother was .... interested in the match that he waited 5 hours to watch it.
  a) so b) such c) such an d) too



49 I'm too busy .... to work every day.
a) going b) to go c) to going d) go

50 He pays .... little attention to what I say that it makes me angry.
a) so b) such a c) too d) such

51 There wasn't .... for three more people to come with us in the car.
a) such a room b) too room c) room enough d) enough room

52 I have got so much work to do and Ahmed has, ...
a) such b) enough c) too d) so

53 It was .... for us to go skiing.
a) so icy b) icy enough c) too icy d) enough icy

54 It was .... day that I went to bed early.
a) so tiring a b) so a tiring c) such tiring d) too tiring

Previous Exams *Exercises*

55 She is.................. creative person that she can solve any problem. (ث.ع ٢٠١٩)
a) so b) too c) such a d) enough

56 It was .... an interesting book that I recommended it to my son. (ث.ع ٢٠١٩)
a) very b) such c) enough d) so

57 It was .... a boring film that I fell sleep before the end. (السودان ٢٠١٩)
a) such b) too c) so d) enough

58 The river isn't clean .... for fish to live in. (الأزهر ٢٠١٩)
a) so b) too c) such d) enough

Language Functions

Asking for and Giving reasons: السؤال عن وإعطاء الأسباب:

Asking for reasons	Giving reasons
• Can you tell me why?	• (It's) because ....
• Why ....?	• For (two/three) reasons.
• Is that the reason ....?	• To start with .... Firstly/
• Is that why ....?	• Secondly, because ....
• What (did you choose her) for?	• That's one of the reasons.
• What's the reason for ....?	• Mainly because ....

Skills Exercises

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

My cousin Khalid was looking around for a second-hand car. He saw an advertisement in the paper for a Toyota for twenty thousand pounds. He rang up and arranged to go round and have a look. The car was brand new and spotless but Khalid told the woman who showed him the car that he liked to think about it. Really, he didn't think very long. An hour later, he was back. He asked the woman some questions and she said all she wanted 'for it was only twenty thousands pounds. He asked to try it and he was given the keys. The engine started at the first touch. He backed it out and tested everything. He paid the money, filled out the change of ownership and took the car. Khalid couldn't believe it was all legal. He said he was sure there must be something fishy about it and he didn't want to put himself in trouble. So instead of going home, he drove straight to the police station where he left a note for the police to check his car. The police officer told him that everything is legal but the woman hadn't told him everything. Her husband was taken dead out of the car and soon no one wanted to buy it. Khalid wished he had never known about that. He himself felt uncomfortable. Although he was able to make a profit of many thousand pounds he still regrets buying the car.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Where could Khalid find the car he wanted?

a) In the newspaper. b) In his book.
c) In the car market. d) A woman offered it to him.

2. How were the papers of the car?

a) False. b) Legal. c) Illegal. d) Untrue.

3. Why did the woman sell the car?

a) She wanted to buy a new one.
b) She wanted to buy a cheaper one.
c) She was pessimistic about it.
d) It was not good.

4. What does the underlined word "fishy" mean?

a) With a lot of fish. b) Fell in water.
c) Expensive. d) Suspicious.

B) Answer the following questions:

5. What did Khalid do after testing the car? Mention two things.
6. What didn't the woman tell Khalid about the car?
7. What did Khalid wish in the end?
8. What do you think of the woman? Why?

2 Write an essay of about (180) words on the following:

"What do you think are the advantages and disadvantages of freelance work?"

3 Translation:

A) Translate into Arabic:

1. A freelancer is a self-employed person who offers services to many clients at a time. Freelancing has become popular as it saves companies a lot of costs.
2. In modern life it is very hard to balance work and family or other social affairs. So, many people suffer from stress and have psychological problems.
3. School life is very important in one's life, because it provides opportunity for study and discipline. A student also learns how to adapt to society in his later life.
4. Breaks can fill the psychological costs associated with working hard and improve work performance. They provide a good way to refresh yourself.
5. Ambition and patience are the most important qualities that we should have to be able to succeed. Without them, you will be in a mess at all fields of life.

(ث.ع (معدلة ٢٠١٦)

6. The boy Scouts is an organization that teaches young people to be good citizens and trains them to become leaders. They work well through camps at schools and youth centres. (الأزهر (معدلة ٢٠٠٥)

B) Translate into English:

١- أحد عيوب العمل كموظف حر هو عدم ثبات الدخل والعملاء الذين تعمل معهم لكنه أيضًا يوفر الوقت والجهد الذى يبذله الموظف فى الانتقال يوميًا من وإلى العمل يوميا.

٢- قراءة التاريخ تساعد الشباب على التعرف على مجد أمتهم والفخر بها كما تعرف الشباب على العظماء الذين يمثلون أفضل قدوة لهم لما قدموه لبلادهم من أعمال عظيمة.

٣-يجب علينا معاملة ذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة بطريقة تشجعهم على الاندماج فى المجتمع وذلك بتوفير كل الإمكانيات التى تمكنهم من ذلك إلى جانب المعاملة اللائقة لهم. (ث.ع (معدلة ٢٠١٦)

٤- إن مصر بتراثها الحضارى العريق قادرة على تحقيق التقدم فى جميع المجالات. والإنجازات التى قام بها المصريون على مر التاريخ تؤكد على الحضارة الكبيرة التى تميز مصر. (الأزهر (معدلة ٢٠٠٦)



Enrich your Vocabulary

affairs	أمور/شئون	leaders	قادة
associated	مرتبط/متعلق	patience	الصبر
combination	الاندماج	performance	أداء
heritage	تراث	psychological	نفسى
income	الدخل	scouts	كشافة
instability	عدم ثبات	with special needs	ذووى الاحتياجات الخاصة

Open General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Don't be taken .... by products claiming to help you lose weight in a week.
   a) off b) on c) in d) up
2. The company buys and sells shares at the stock market for their ....
   a) clients b) colleagues
   c) guests d) consumers
3. Walking is dad's favourite .... these days.
   a) post b) occupation c) job d) profession
4. Greenpeace is an international .... that protects the environment.
   a) institution b) association
   c) union d) organisation
5. Another .... came to me about the new house.
   a) concept b) advice c) thought d) notion
6. The journalist gave a detailed .... of the train accident in his report.
   a) quality b) account
   c) amount d) balance
7. Parents take care of all their children's expenses, but within ...., of course.
   a) balances b) borders
   c) stresses d) limits

8 Samy was taken to .... for not finishing his reports in time.
a) task b) duty c) work d) job

9 The doctor warned the worker that standing all day puts .... on his feet.
a) pain b) stress c) illness d) relief

10 At the summer camp, we were taught how to .... the sun's rays on dried grass and make a fire.
a) control b) manage c) focus d) distract

11 .... I'd really like is some peace and quiet.
a) What b) Which c) Where d) How

12 Ramy really enjoyed the meal last night, ... did I.
a) none b) nor c) neither d) so

13 No .... had I said hello to Hatem than he had to leave.
a) rarely b) sooner
c) scarcely d) Hardly

14 There's no need to hurry - we've got .... of time.
a) several b) lot c) plenty d) little

15 Could I have .... juice, please?
a) some b) every c) any d) many

16 There're .... eggs left in the fridge.
a) either b) none c) neither d) no

17 .... cars over there are very badly parked.
a) These b) Those c) That d) This

18 Dalia looked at .... in the mirror and put on her makeup.
a) hers b) her c) herself d) she

19 Nothing .... but a strict warning will make him realise his mistake.
a) else b) any c) ever d) either

20 The couple chatted with .... while they waited for the bus.
a) the other b) every other
c) one other d) each other

Test 5 Based on Unit 5

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He's .... rude that nobody speaks to him.
   a) such b) so c) too d) enough
2. Our internet connection isn't .... to download a film.
   a) too fast b) such fast c) fast enough d) enough fast
3. I told my friend that if we couldn't meet the ...., they wouldn't give us another contract.
   a) deadline b) match c) fate d) end
4. It was .... race that we were very exhausted after it.
   a) enough long b) too long c) so long d) such a long
5. There is a need to .... the demands of the work place with those of family life.
   a) split b) ignore c) balance d) neglect
6. He is .... loyal to everyone that he deserves praise.
   a) too b) so c) enough d) such a
7. The police have arrested seven drug smugglers in three .... search attacks this week.
   a) divided b) alone c) solo d) separate
8. It was .... interesting trip that all of us thanked the guide a lot.
   a) such a b) such the c) such an d) so
9. My neighbour stayed at home while the children were small and made a little money from .... writing.
   a) freelance b) free c) freely d) freedom
10. It's 3 o'clock. I think it's .... to go to Ahmed's invitation for dinner.
    a) enough early b) too early c) so early d) such an early
11. The boys walked .... slowly that they missed the first lesson.
    a) so b) to c) too d) enough
12. Jehan has been under a lot of .... lately because of her difficult exams.
    a) press b) compress c) success d) stress
13. She invited .... a lot of guests to her party that there wasn't enough room for all of them.
    a) so b) such c) too d) enough
14. My brother is a sociable person, which means that he enjoys ....
    a) being with company all the time
    b) being with a company all the time
    c) being helped by others
    d) being in charge of people at work

15 Could you give me directions to .... Shiraton Hotel, please?

a) the b) an c) a d) no article

16 He did .... me where I was going.

a) to ask b) ask c) asked d) asking

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Water is one of the basic necessities of life. We require plenty of water every day for drinking, cooking and washing. It is necessary also for cleanliness of homes and hospitals.

Water is an essential natural resource. It is also liable to fluctuations due to the annual amount of rainfall, evaporation and the effects of pollution caused by waterweeds. Therefore, it is vital to carry out projects based on methods that would ensure a sufficient supply of water. The purpose of such projects should be directed towards land reclamation, agricultural and other food sufficiency projects. Although Egypt possesses the River Nile, with its streams, numerous lakes and large underground reservoirs, it should not ignore the danger of water shortage.

Thus. Egypt should adopt projects to prevent water shortage in the future. Vast quantities of water are required to reclaim and irrigate land under cultivation, operate factories and meet the citizens' requirements of water for personal use.

Egypt's future development, therefore, depends on successfully expanding its efforts to reclaim and, then, cultivate land in the presently barren regions. In addition, citizens must be encouraged to populate areas located near the reclaimed desert land. So, it is necessary to provide these areas with sufficient supplies of water.

Further, we can save water in our daily life by doing minor acts such as, putting off the water tap while not in use, use water wisely while bathing, etc. If each of us start saving water, then together it would have a compounded effect and help in reducing the problem of water crisis.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What can the annual amount of rainfall and evaporation cause to water?

a) They make water disappear.
b) They make water polluted.
c) They make water rise and fall.
d) They make water boil.



2. **Why should we be careful when carrying out projects depending on water?**
   a) to give us enough vegetables.
   b) to ensure a sufficient supply of water for them.
   c) to raise animals
   d) to employ more people.
3. **What does the underlined word "Vast" in the passage mean?**
   a) Huge. b) Little.
   c) Small. d) Few.
4. **Which one of these isn't a way of saving water?**
   a) Using water to cultivate the barren regions.
   b) Being wise while using it.
   c) Putting off the water tap while not in use.
   d) Using modern methods of irrigation.

B) Answer the following questions:

5. Mention two different water resources in Egypt.
6. Illustrate what projects in Egypt should be directed to. Mention two things.
7. Mention two things that can help Egypt's future development.
8. What, do you think, we can do to save water? Give two points.

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

Freelance work helps you get to choose who you collaborate with, the location you work from and the volume of work you take on.

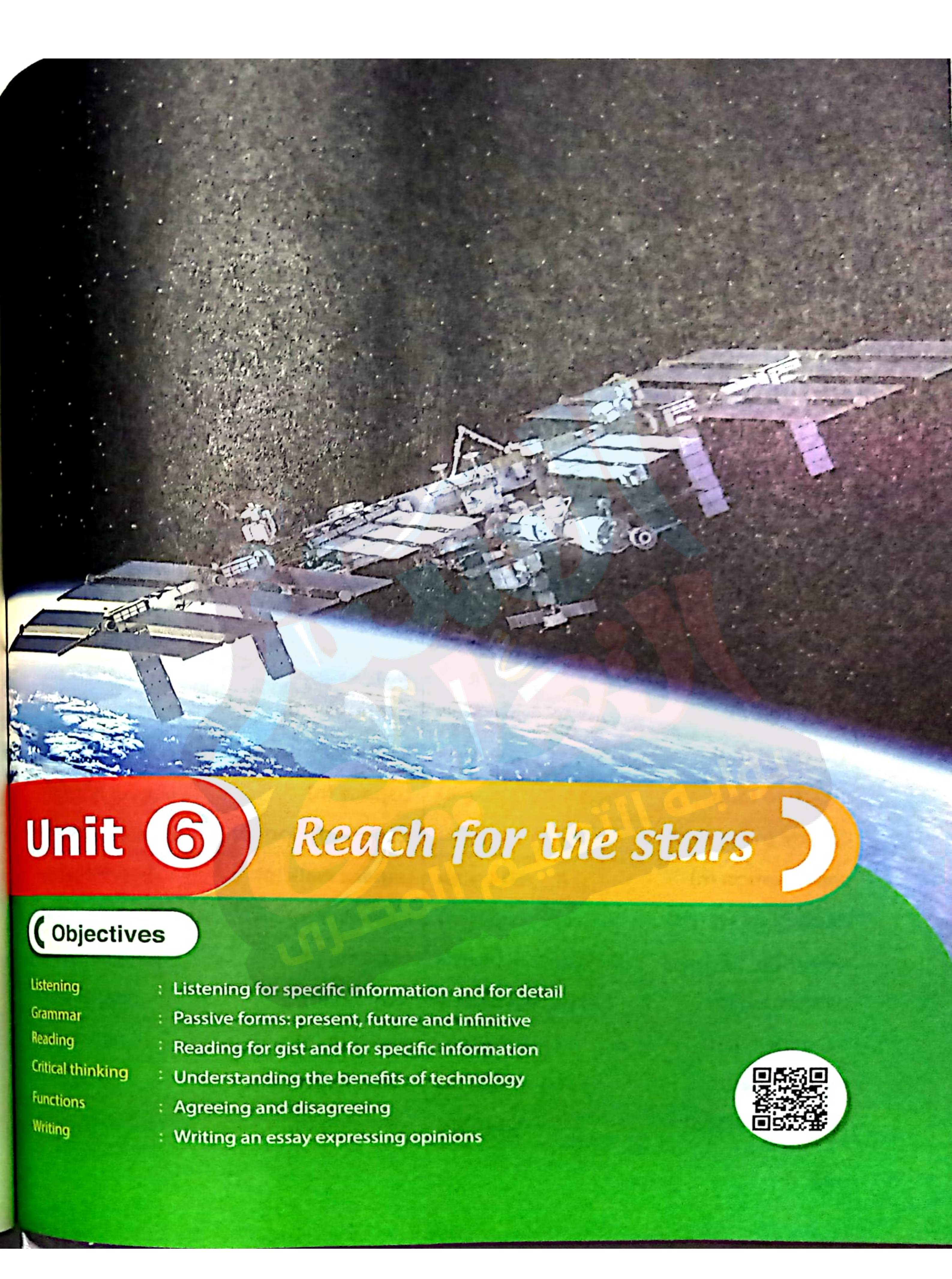
B) Translate into English:

طالما أن وسائل الإعلام تلعب دورًا أساسيًا فى تشكيل الراى العام فعليها تحرى الصدق حتى لا تكون مصدرًا للإشاعات التى ر بأمن البلاد والشعوب.

4 Write an essay of about (180) words on the following:

Which is better "Having your own business or getting a governmental post?"





Unit 6 Reach for the stars

Objectives

Listening	:	Listening for specific information and for detail
Grammar	:	Passive forms: present, future and infinitive
Reading	:	Reading for gist and for specific information
Critical thinking	:	Understanding the benefits of technology
Functions	:	Agreeing and disagreeing
Writing	:	Writing an essay expressing opinions





Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

anniversary (n)	ذكرى سنوية	leak (n) (v) (ed)	تسريب/يتسرب
distance (n)	مسافة	mission (n)	مهمة/بعثة
giant (adj)	عملاق	representative (n)	مندوب/ممثل
gravity (n)	جاذبية	side effects (n)	آثار جانبية
hopeful (adj)	مشجع/مبشر	spin (v)	يدور حول محوره
horrible (adj)	فظيع	tourism (n)	السياحة
launch (n) (v) (ed)	إطلاق/يطلق	weightless (adj)	عديم الوزن

Vocabulary on Listening

astronaut (n)	رائد فضاء	serious (adj)	جاد/خطير
attach (v) (ed)	يربط/يضم	situation (n)	موقف
attached (adj)	متصل	space (n)	الفضاء/مسافة
control (n) (v) (led)	تحكم/يتحكم	space station (n)	محطة فضاء
conversation (n)	حوار/محادثة	space walk (n)	السير فى الفضاء
depend on (v) (ed)	يعتمد على	speaker (n)	متحدث
desert (n)	صحراء	station (n)	محطة
equipment (n)	معدات/تجهيزات	studio (n)	استوديو
examine (v) (d)	يفحص	system (n)	نظام
reach (v) (ed)	يصل إلى	temperature (n)	درجة حرارة
repair (n) (v) (ed)	إصلاح/يصلح	training (n)	تدريب



Vocabulary on Reading

area (n)	منطقة
cost (n) (v)	تكلفة/يتكلف
describe (v) (d)	يصف
disadvantage (n)	عيب/ضرر
expect (v) (ed)	يتوقع
experts (n)	خبراء
feeling (n)	شعور
orbit (n) (v) (ed)	مدار/يدور فى مدار
organisation (n)	منظمة
predict (v) (ed)	يتنبأ
saving (n)	توفير/إدخار
special (adj)	خاص
treatment (n)	علاج/دواء
wheel (n)	عجلة

Critical Thinking, Communication & Workbook Vocabulary

air conditioning (n)	تكييف الهواء
amount (n)	كمية
battery (n)	بطارية
benefit (n) (v) (ted)	فائدة/يستفيد
climate change (n)	تغير المناخ
communication (n)	اتصال
compare (v) (d)	يقارن
directions (n)	اتجاهات
education (n)	التعليم
exciting (adj)	رائع/مثير
exploration (n)	استكشاف
find out (v)	يكتشف
force (n) (v) (d)	قوة/يجبر
global warming (n)	الاحتباس الحرارى
health (n)	صحة
improve (v) (d)	يحسن
instant (adj)	فورى/عاجل
look like (v) (ed)	يشبه
minus (prep)	سالب/ناقص
objects (n)	أشياء
password (n)	كلمة سر
patient (n) (adj)	مريض/صبور
perform (v) (ed)	يؤدى/يفعل
planet (n)	كوكب
questionnaire (n)	استبيان
reason (n)	سبب



replace (v) (d)	يستبدل
rocket (n)	صاروخ
satellite (n)	قمر صناعى
Saturn (n)	كوكب زحل
secret (n) (adj)	سر/سرى

tank (n)	حوض/خزان
tap (n)	حنفية/صنبور
transport (n)	النقل
unexpected (adj)	غير متوقع
waste (n)	تبذير/إضاعة

Focus on Vocabulary

anniversary (n) ذكرى سنوية	a date which is remembered because something important happened on that date in a previous year
distance (n) مسافة/بُعد	the amount of space between two places or things
giant (adj) عملاق	much larger than other things of the same type
gravity (n) الجاذبية	the force that makes objects fall to the ground
hopeful (adj) مشجع/مبشر	if you are hopeful about a situation, you think that something good will probably happen
horrible (adj) فظيع	very unpleasant or unkind
launch (v) يطلق	to send a spaceship into the sky
leak (n) تسرب	a small hole that liquid or gas gets out through
mission (n) مَهَمّة	an important job that someone has been given to do
representative (n) ممثل/مندوب	someone who is chosen to do things, speak, vote, etc. for someone else



side effect (n) أثر جانبى	the bad or unwanted effect something such as medicine has on your body
spin (v) يدور/ يلف حول محوره	to turn round and round very quickly
tourism (n) السياحة	when people travel to a place on holiday
weightless (adj) عديم الوزن	having no weight, especially when you are floating in space

Expressions & Idioms

at a height of	على ارتفاع	go on a mission	يذهب فى مهمة
book a holiday	يحجز إجازة	go shopping	يذهب للتسوق
do (make) repairs	يرمم/يقوم بإصلاحات	have plans	لديه خطط
do space walks	يقوم بالسير فى الفضاء	over the years	على مر السنين
do weightless sports	يمارس رياضة انعدام الوزن	reach for the stars	تحقيق هدف صعب
float in space	يسبح فى الفضاء	sat-nav system	نظام الملاحة بالأقمار الصناعية
for sure	بالتأكيد	stand still	يقف بلا حراك
go for a walk	يذهب للتمشية	travel into space	يسافر إلى الفضاء

Phrases & Prepositions

attached to	مرتبط بـ	look down on	ينظر إلى أسفل
benefit from	يستفيد من	look forward to	يتطلع إلى
break down	يتعطل	spend ... on	ينفق ... على
compare ... to	يقارن ... بـ	thank for	يشكر على
depend on	يعتمد على	treatment for	علاج لـ
expert in (on/at)	خبير فى	waste of	ضياع/إهدار لـ

Derivatives

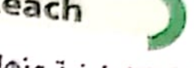
Verb		Noun		Adjective	
----------		weightlessness	انعدام الوزن	weightless	عديم الوزن
depend	يعتمد	dependence	اعتماد/اتكال	dependent	معتمد
describe	يصف	description	وصف	descriptive	وصفي
predict	يتنبأ	prediction	تنبؤ	predictive	تنبؤي
save	يوفر/يحمي/ينقذ	saving	توفير/إدخار	----------	
organise	ينظم	organisation	منظمة	organised	منظم
leak	يتسرب	leak	تسريب	leaky	مسرب
communicate	يتواصل	communication	اتصال	communicative	تواصلي
explore	يستكشف	exploration explorer	استكشاف مستكشف	exploratory	استكشافي

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
giant	عملاق	titan/gigantic	tiny/minute	صغير/دقيق
gravity	الجاذبية	heaviness	weightlessness	انعدام الوزن
hopeful	متفائل/مبشر	cheerful	hopeless	يائس
horrible	فظيع	awful	attractive	جذاب
launch	يطلق	fire/release	hold/cease	يوقف
leak	تسرب	spill/escape	conceal/hide	يخفي
mission	مَهَمة	task	recreation	ترفيه
repair	يصلح/إصلاح	mend	damage	يتلف
spin	يدور/يلف حول نفسه	revolve	steady	يثبت



Important Language Notes



Reach

- يستخدم الفعل (reach) بمعانٍ مختلفة فى اللغة الإنجليزية منها:

reach	يصل إلى مكان	- We reached London late at night.
reach	يمد يده نحو	- She's too small to reach the table.
reach	يصل طوله/ارتفاعه إلى	- The phone lead isn't long enough to reach the bedroom.
reach	تصل درجة الحرارة إلى	- Temperatures on some planets can reach minus 100.
reach	يصل إلى/يحرز (تقدمًا)	- Our team could reach the final of the Cup.
reach	يصل إلى/يحقق (شيئًا معنويًا)	- He worked hard to reach success.
reach	يستطيع التحدث إلى	- I can probably reach him on his mobile.

Suffix اللاحقة

- هى مقاطع تضاف إلى آخر الكلمة لتكوين كلمة جديدة لإعطاء معنى جديد أو لتحديد نوع الكلمة منها:

Suffix	Meaning	Examples			
ful	تعطى معنى (ملىء بـ) أو (به)	hopeful	مبشر	painful	مؤلم
		fearful	مخيف	powerful	قوى
		useful	مفيد	tasteful	ذو ذوق جيد
less	تعطى معنى (بلا) أو (بدون)	hopeless	يائس	homeless	مشرد/بلا مأوى
		useless	بلا فائدة	painless	غير مؤلم
		powerless	عاجز/بلا قوة	fearless	شجاع/غير خائف
		tasteless	بلا طعم		

Launch & examine & (get) a leak in

- يتبع هذه الأفعال بعض الأسماء (كمفعول لها) وقد لا تستخدم مع غيرها.

launch	يطلق	- a ship/a rocket/a space shuttle	مكوك فضاء
		- a campaign	حملة
examine	يفحص	- a patient/a car	
get a leak in	يجد تسربًا فى	- a cup/a tap/a tank	





Other Language Notes

launch / release

launch
يطلق قذيفة/مركبة فضائية/قمرًا صناعيًا أو أى شىء فى الهواء أو الفضاء.
ويعنى أيضا إطلاق سفينة أو مركب فى الماء أو طرح منتج معين فى الأسواق أو خدمة للجمهور.

- Despite the problems they faced, they launched the shuttle at the appointed time.

release = set free
يطلق سراح شخص أو حيوان من محبسه أو يحرره.

- The President ordered to release some political prisoners on the occasion of the feast.

أو يتوقف عن الإمساك بشىء لينطلق فى الهواء.

- Two thousand balloons were released into the air at the ceremony.

explore / discover / invent / find out

explore
يستكشف مكانًا (يسافر حول مكان ليعرف عنه معلومات)

- They went on an expedition to explore the River Nile.

discover
يكتشف (شيئًا كان موجودًا من قبل ولكنه غير معروف)

- Christopher Columbus is the sailor who discovered America.

invent
يخترع (شيئًا لم يكن له وجود من قبل)

- Alexander Graham Bell invented the telephone in 1876.

find out
يكتشف حقيقة

- Wael's parents found out that he had started to smoke a long time ago.

cause / reason

cause (n) of سبب/مُسَبِّب (يؤدى إلى نتيجة)

cause (v) يسبب/يحدث

- The major cause of these accidents is drivers going too fast.
- High winds caused many trees to fall during the night.

reason (n) for سبب (دافع) + noun or (v-ing)

- The police wanted to know the reason for her visit.
- Could you explain your reasons for choosing this job?

The reason why + (sentence جملة**)**

- The reason why so many people caught the flu is still not clear.



a two-hour + اسم مفرد **ten-minute + اسم جمع**

a two-hour drive قيادة ساعتين بالسيارة

- لاحظ أن two-hour صفة لما بعدها وأن hour تأتى مفردًا وإذا أردنا الجمع:
- نجمع ما بعدها من أسماء ونحذف a

- a two-way street شارع ذو اتجاهين
- two-way streets شوارع كل منها ذو اتجاهين
- ten-minute breaks فسح/استراحات كل استراحة منها عشر دقائق

reach **arrive**

reach يصل إلى (بدون حروف جر)

- We hoped to reach the station before the departure of the train.

arrive (in/at) يصل إلى

- What time does your plane arrive?
- The plane arrived in Cairo on time. (مدينة/دولة)
- They arrived at the station ten minutes later. (مبنى/مكان عمل/سكان)

anniversary **memory**

anniversary ذكرى سنوية

- July 2009 was the 40th anniversary of man first walking on the moon.

memory ذاكرة/ذكرى

- The memory of that night is still clear in his mind.

affect **effect**

affect (v) يؤثر على

- Smoking affects health badly.

effect (n) تأثير

- Smoking has a bad effect on health.

everyone / everybody / someone / somebody / no one / nobody

- Everyone drives their cars on the right side in Egypt.
- Everybody is here. They are all happy.

لاحظ استخدام فعل مفرد مع الكلمات السابقة ولكن عند الإشارة إليها نستخدم ضمير الجمع.

The + صفة مقارنة ..... كلما ..... كلما

تستخدم هذه الصيغة للتعبير عن المقارنة بين موقفين (زيادة أو نقصان) أو تغير طردي أو عكسي.

- The fewer mistakes you make, the higher marks you get.

كلما قلت أخطاؤك، ارتفعت درجاتك.

- The more people want to buy something, the cheaper it will become.

كلما زاد عدد الناس الذين يرغبون في شراء شيء ما، أصبح رخيصا.



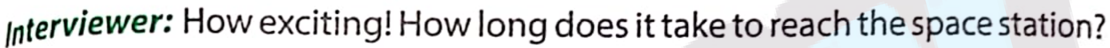
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The .... of the first space shuttle was an important achievement.
   a) launch b) release c) exploration d) invitation
2. The storm .... great damage to the area.
   a) reasoned b) helped c) caused d) resulted
3. The school trip hoped to .... the camp before dark.
   a) arrive b) reach c) get d) go
4. There was a concert to mark the 10th .... of the Revolution.
   a) memory b) souvenir c) memorial d) anniversary
5. Doctors say that any change in lifestyle will have a/an .... on your health.
   a) affect b) effect c) affection d) defection
6. A lot of people are surprised to know that Alfred Nobel .... dynamite.
   a) explored b) discovered c) invented d) found out
7. It is believed that the harder you work, the .... successful you become.
   a) many b) more c) most d) less
8. Ahmed looks .... saying that he will never learn to swim.
   a) hopeful b) powerful c) painless d) hopeless
9. I think you should be .... by a doctor.
   a) launched b) examined c) discovered d) encouraged
10. Temperatures in this desert can .... 60 degrees centigrade in summer.
    a) arrive in b) reach c) get to d) go to





Listening Text









Interviewer: Thank you for coming into the studio this morning. Could you start by telling the listeners what you're doing this week?

Astronaut **:** Well, this is a very special week for me. Tomorrow afternoon, I'm being taken with two other astronauts[1] to a secret location. The spaceship[2] launches[3] at 7.50 the next evening.

Interviewer: How exciting! How long does it take to reach the space station?

Astronaut **:** It takes about six hours. I'm really looking forward to it.

Interviewer: What is your mission[4], exactly?

Astronaut **:** There are two or three little things that need to be looked at on the International Space Station, but the main problem is the temperature control system[5]. We think there may be a leak[6] of some kind.

Interviewer: Is that a problem?

Astronaut **:** We don't think so. We think it will be repaired quite quickly.

Interviewer: Is it a difficult job?

Astronaut **:** No, not particularly, but we'll almost certainly need to spend some time working outside.

Interviewer: Do you mean a space walk[7]?

Astronaut **:** Yes, maybe, but we won't know until we're there. Then all the equipment will be examined.

Interviewer: Isn't that really dangerous?

Astronaut **:** Not really. We're given a lot of training. We're told exactly what to do in these situations when we will be weightless[8] in space.

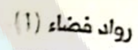
Interviewer: How long will you be in space for?

Astronaut **:** We'll probably be there for about five or six days. It depends on how serious the problems are.

Interviewer: I'm sure you'll be interviewed by a lot of journalists after your mission, but we'd love to talk to you again when you get back!

Astronaut **:** I'd be happy to.

Interviewer: Thank you.



(1) رواد فضاء
(2) سفينة فضاء
(3) يطلق
(4) مَهَمة
(5) نظام
(6) تسريب
(7) السير فى الفضاء
(8) عديم الوزن

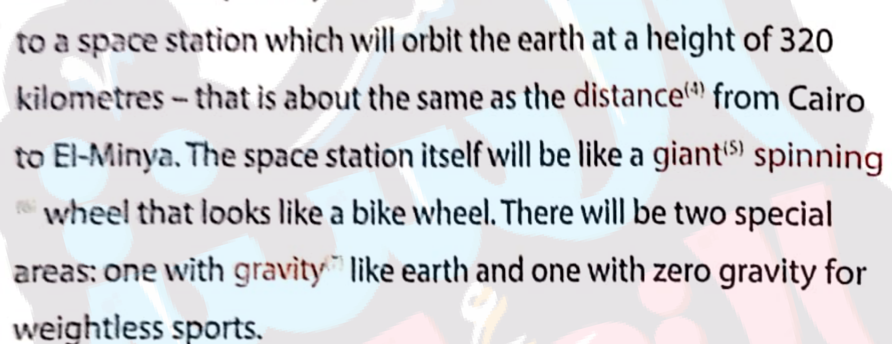




Space holidays



20 July 2019 is the 50th anniversary[1] of a man first walking on the moon. Now a representative[2] for the World Tourism[3] Organisation predicts that, in the next ten years, people will be taken into space for their holidays. They will be flown in a spaceship to a space station which will orbit the earth at a height of 320 kilometres – that is about the same as the distance[4] from Cairo to El-Minya. The space station itself will be like a giant[5] spinning[6] wheel that looks like a bike wheel. There will be two special areas: one with gravity[7] like earth and one with zero gravity for weightless sports.



Some people who are interested in space holidays are worried that, as space tourists, they will suffer from the same horrible[8] side effects[9] as astronauts have suffered from, but experts are hopeful[10] that there will be treatments for most side effects.

(1) ذكرى سنوية
(2) مندوب/ممثل
(3) السياحة
(4) مسافة
(5) عملاق
(6) يدور حول محوره
(7) جاذبية
(8) فظيع
(9) آثار جانبية
(10) مشجع/مبشر

Just think about such a holiday in space! Everyone who has travelled in space has described the amazing feeling of looking down on the earth as it spins below you. It will be impossible to go shopping or go for a walk, but think of the fun you can have with weightless football or weightless basketball.

For most people, the main disadvantage is the cost of space holidays. At the moment, the cost of a holiday is very high. But, like everything else, the more people want to do something, the cheaper it will become. So, if you are interested, start saving now!



Notes on some sentences from (Listening & Reading) texts

1 Thank you for coming into the studio this morning.
- أى حرف جر بعده v-ing ما عدا to بعدها المصدر ولكن بعض تعبيرات to معها الفعل به ing أو ضمير مثل:

I'm really looking forward to it (travelling).

2 How exciting! What an exciting + noun (film)!
- نستخدم How دائمًا بعدها صفة و What بعدها اسم للإشارة إلى التعجب.

3 The main problem is the temperature control system.
- لاحظ أن main صفة دائمًا تتبع باسم وكذلك:

chief, indoor, outdoor, only, outer, upper, etc.

4 20 July 2019 is the 50th anniversary of a man first walking on the moon.
- نستخدم v-ing عند حذف who وبعدها معلوم فاصل الجملة السابقة a man who first walked.

5 If you are interested, start saving now!
- تذكر أن جواب شرط الحالة الأولى يمكن أن يكون فعل أمر.

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The explosion happened because there was a gas .... from one of the pipes.
a) leak b) pipe c) tube d) hall

2 We'll need to get someone to .... the washing machine soon.
a) reform b) reclaim c) reuse d) repair

3 Scientists are .... the impact of global warming on local climates.
a) inspecting b) requiring c) examining d) acquiring

4 The new political agreement was supposed to be ...., but everyone knew about it.
a) secret b) known c) famous d) popular

5 One of the astronaut's most dangerous missions is doing a .... outside their space station.
a) space flight b) spacecraft c) space walk d) space run

6 The shop owner decided to install a security .... after it was robbed.
a) process b) system c) discipline d) operation

7 A weather satellite was .... by China last month.
a) raised b) launched c) lifted d) flown

8 Some scientists are on a .... to the rainforest, to study possible medicinal uses of plants.
a) motion b) emission c) walk d) mission

9 One of the big problem of travelling to the moon is its weak ....
a) power b) gravity c) energy d) strength

10 Mr. Yasser bought his wife a diamond ring on their tenth wedding ....
a) memorial b) memory c) reminding d) anniversary

11 It is said that space .... may be a reality in the next years. Special spacecraft are designed for such trips.
a) tourism b) agriculture c) science d) exploration

12 In some countries children must travel a long .... to school every day.
a) length b) space c) distance d) width

13 Astronauts are trained to work in .... conditions.
a) weighty b) weightless c) weight d) weightlessness

14 The Earth .... on its axis once every 24 hours.
a) spins b) orbits c) evolves d) returns

15 Ramses II was known as a great king and a .... soldier.
a) useless b) painless c) homeless d) fearless

16 This kind of technology is .... if you can't operate it.
a) useful b) painful c) useless d) painless

17 Doctors are .... that the patient will get better soon.
a) hopeful b) painful c) powerful d) fearful

18 The operation took only 10 minutes and was completely ....
a) hopeless b) painless c) powerless d) tasteless

19 The floods have killed hundreds and made thousands ....
a) useless b) painless c) homeless d) fearless

20 Father believes that airplane food is always very ....
a) painless b) homeless c) powerless d) tasteless

21 The loss of her husband to cancer was a very .... experience.
a) hopeful b) painful c) powerful d) tasteful

22 Female lions are smaller and less .... than males.
a) hopeful b) painful c) powerful d) tasteful

23 Mr. Kamel is in New York as a/an .... for our company in the conference.
a) representative b) actor c) seller d) customer

24 It was believed that *Titanic* was one of the first .... ships made in Britain.
a) small b) transport c) space d) giant

25 It was really .... coming home and finding all our things stolen.
a) terrific b) amusing c) pleasant d) horrible

26 Microsoft is a world famous computer .... which makes a lot of profits.
a) customer b) market c) organisation d) client

27 A person who travels and works in space is called an ....
a) astronomer b) astrologer c) astronaut d) airman

28 The area outside the earth's atmosphere is called ....
a) freedom b) height c) distance d) space

29 We think there may be a leak in the .... control system.
a) fire b) rain c) heat d) temperature

30 The astronauts have to repair .... on the International Space Station.
a) equipment b) gadgets c) requirements d) device

31 Students' future .... on how well they do in these exams.
a) bases b) depends c) gives d) builds

32 The agency will launch a space .... next month.
a) team b) boat c) rocket d) racket

33 The space station will be orbiting the earth at a .... of 320 kilometres.
a) height b) weight c) length d) width

34 One of the .... of my new job is that I have to travel a lot away from my family.
a) merits b) disadvantages c) advantages d) fault

35 Mr. Omar is the only .... in radio communications in our company.
a) buyer b) user c) helper d) expert

36 Industry leaders .... that another 8,000 jobs could be available by the end of the year.
a) talk b) predict c) reflect d) speak

37 The patients of the virus are responding well to ....
a) healing b) behaviour c) treatment d) health

38 The police asked her about the .... for her visit.
a) matter b) question c) case d) reason

39 We'll have to ______ all the furniture that was damaged in the flood.
a) buy b) replace c) place d) sail

40 I had a two-______ training course in America.
a) months b) month's c) month d) months'

41 Overpopulation is a/an ______ problem that we face nowadays.
a) serious b) trivial c) easy d) safe

42 On this mission, the shuttle will ______ the earth at a height of several hundred miles.
a) turn b) spin c) go d) orbit

43 Poor people suffer from the high ______ of living.
a) standard b) cost c) raising d) price

44 A new space ______ was built by American scientists.
a) station b) moon c) exploration d) building

45 The glass of submarines is made of ______ materials to resist the high pressure underwater.
a) general b) special c) private d) common

46 We need modern technology to help solve environmental problems like .... warming.
a) national b) local c) international d) global

47 Some people think that space ______ is a waste of money.
a) exploration b) investigation c) invention d) business

48 The medicine I'm taking is wonderful. It has no side ______ .
a) defects b) monuments c) effects d) problems

49 Some people have ______ more from modern technology than others.
a) won b) moved c) wasted d) benefited

50 Modern technology has ______ everyone's lives.
a) proved b) approved c) removed d) improved

51 We had to ______ the rope to the branch of the tree to climb it up.
a) catch b) contact c) attach d) comply

52 If the heater is faulty, it may be ______ dangerous gas.
a) lacking b) leaking c) reducing d) decreasing

53 The kids have ______ the age when they can care for themselves.
a) arrived b) got c) developed d) reached

54 This broadcast comes live via ______ in Russia.
a) mobile b) satellite c) mail d) space

- She was fired for not .... her duties as the manager's secretary well.
  a) working b) carrying c) performing d) producing
- Modern technologies such as the mobile phone make .... easier.
  a) procedure b) opinion c) process d) communication
- I was .... to take a taxi because the last bus had left.
  a) prohibited b) allowed c) kicked d) forced
- The new factory will bring a lot of .... to the area by employing people and refreshing the economy.
  a) harms b) troubles c) benefits d) interests
- Please complete the .... and return it in the envelope provided.
  a) article b) questionnaire c) project d) passage
- My friend gave me .... to his new house, so I arrived there safely.
  a) directions b) instructions c) invitations d) contracts

Expressions, idioms, prepositions, derivatives, synonyms and antonyms *Exercises*

- The adjective "awful" is a synonym to the adjective ....
  a) puzzle b) decision c) horrible d) debate
- I won't know the truth .... sure until I call my friends.
  a) with b) by c) to d) for
- The verb "repair" can be the opposite to the verb ....
  a) damage b) expand c) increase d) accept
- Trying to achieve a very difficult aim is really reaching .... the stars.
  a) on b) about c) to d) for
- The word "conceal" is an antonym to the word ....
  a) hide b) support c) leak d) dry
- Scientists believe that technology will never .... still.
  a) stand b) stop c) sit d) arrive
- Customers complained that the sales assistants were not very ....
  a) communicate b) communicated
  c) communication d) communicative
- The young man's salary is so poor that he is economically dependent .... his family.
  a) on b) of c) to d) with

69 Now it is easy for astronauts to .... space walks.
a) make b) take c) do d) give

70 The company's catalogue gives a full .... of each product.
a) describe b) description c) descriptive d) describer

71 The fire victims were taken to hospital for treatment .... burns and smoke inhalation.
a) for b) of c) to d) with

72 The verb "revolve" is similar in meaning to ....
a) break b) protect c) spin d) prohibit

Previous Exams *Exercises*

73 July 2010 was the 41st .... of man's first landing on the moon. (ثع ٢٠١١)
a) anniversary b) anonymous c) anomalous d) advisory

74 It is hard to walk in space because there is no .... (ثع ٢٠١٤/٢٠١٦)
a) spin b) gravity c) air d) waiting

75 People in space are almost ....; it must be very difficult to stand still out there. (ثع ٢٠١٥)
a) weighty b) weightless c) heavy d) heavily

76 The Prime Minister is going on an urgent .... to Japan tomorrow. (ثع ٢٠١٥)
a) mission
b) mansion
c) mention
d) motion

77 My dishonest secretary .... the balance sheet to the press. (السودان ٢٠١٧)
a) licked b) leaked c) lacked d) looked

78 A space station will .... the earth. (السودان ٢٠١٩)
a) turn b) spin c) move d) orbit

79 It's their 15th wedding .... so they are having a party. (ثع ٢٠١٩)
a) anniversary
b) engagement
c) retirement
d) employment

80 Some people have to commute a long .... to their work. (ثع ٢٠١٩)
a) distance
b) persistence
c) resistance
d) instance



Active المبنى للمعلوم

- We use the active form when the agent (who or what did it) is more important than the action.

- نستخدم المبنى للمعلوم عندما يكون الفاعل (سواء عاقل أو غير عاقل) أكثر أهمية من المفعول.

- Murad visited his neighbour last week.

نحن نعرف (مراد) ولا نعرف جاره.

وتتكون الجملة فى المبنى للمعلوم من:

Subject (فاعل)	+ Main Verb (فعل أساسى)	+ Object (مفعول)
The mechanic	repairs	cars.

Passive المبنى للمجهول

- We use the passive form when the action is more important than the agent (who or what did it.)

- نستخدم المبنى للمجهول عندما يكون الحدث أكثر أهمية من الفاعل (من أو ماذا فعل):

- The International Space Station is seen in the sky every night.
  (It is not important who sees it.)

- المبنى للمجهول: هو الجملة التى نبدأ فيها بالمفعول فربما لا نعرف من الفاعل أو لا نريد ذكره أو هو معروف جدًا:

- Ahmed's mobile phone was stolen last night. (We don't know who stole it.)
- The thieves were arrested yesterday.

- قُبِضَ على اللصوص أمس (معروف من الذى يقبض على اللصوص فلا داعى لذكر البوليس).

How to form the passive

Object (مفعول)	+ Verb to be	+ P.P.
المفعول يصبح فاعلًا	am/is/are/was/were/be/being/been على شكل الفعل فى المبنى للمعلوم	التصريف الثالث



Passive forms: present, future and infinitive

1 Present simple

am/is/are (not) + past participle

- We always take the bottles for recycling. (Active)
  - The bottles are always taken for recycling. (Passive)

Active المبنى للمعلوم	Passive المبنى للمجهول
• Ahmed waters the plants every week.	• The plants are watered every week (by Ahmed).
Passive Interrogative الاستفهام	**Passive Negative النفى**
• Are the plants watered by Ahmed every week? • When are the plants watered?	• The plants aren't watered every week (by Ahmed).

2 Present continuous

am/is/are (not) + being + past participle

- The chef is preparing lunch now. (Active)
  - Lunch is being prepared now. (Passive)

Active المبنى للمعلوم	Passive المبنى للمجهول
• The porter is carrying the bag.	• The bag is being carried by the porter.
Passive Interrogative الاستفهام	**Passive Negative النفى**
• Is the bag being carried by the porter? • Why is the bag being carried by the porter?	• The bag isn't being carried by the porter.

3

Future simple

will (not) + be + past participile

- The teachers will mark the exams tomorrow.
- The exams will be marked tomorrow (by the teachers).

Active المبنى للمعلوم	Passive المبنى للمجهول
• Ayman will build a house in Assuit.	• A house will be built in Assuit by Ayman.
Passive Interrogative الاستفهام	**Passive Negative النفى**
• Will a house be built in Assuit by Ayman? • Where will a house be built by Ayman?	• A house won't be built in Assuit by Ayman.

(Active)
(Passive)

Check Point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A short story competition .... by our school every year.
   a) will be organised b) was organised
   c) is organised d) is being organised
2. Look! A stage .... in the square.
   a) is being built b) is built
   c) was built d) will be built
3. The new library .... by the Prime Minister next month.
   a) is opened b) will be opened
   c) will have opened d) is opening
4. Repairs .... to the car at the moment.
   a) are made b) are making
   c) will be made d) are being made
5. Many films .... in Hollywood.
   a) will produce b) are producing
   c) are produced d) produced





Modal verbs and (be) going to

Passive infinitives (be + past participle)

- We could see many tourists in the pool. (Active)
  - Many tourists could be seen in the pool. (Passive)
- The government is going to build a new road. (Active)
  - A new road is going to be built. (Passive)

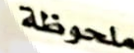
Active المبنى للمعلوم	Passive المبنى للمجهول
• They can solve this problem.	• This problem can be solved.
Passive Interrogative الاستفهام	**Passive Negative النفى**
• Can this problem be solved? • How can this problem be solved?	• This problem can't be solved.

الأفعال التى يأتى بعدها المصدر فى المبنى للمعلوم يأتى بعدها (be + P.P.) فى المبنى للمجهول.

will	سوف	has/have to	يجب أن	appear to	يبدو أن
would	كان سوف	had to	كان يجب أن	(be) going to	سوف
may	ربما	will have to	سيجب أن	(be) about to	على وشك
might	ربما	am to	يجب أن	(be) supposed to	مفروض
can	يستطيع	is/are to	يجب أن	needn't	لست فى حاجة
could	يمكن	was to/were to	كان يجب أن	want to	يريد
must	يجب أن	used to	اعتاد أن	let + object + inf.	يدع
ought to	ينبغى أن	need to	يحتاج أن	expect ... to	يتوقع أن
should	يجب أن	seem to	يبدو أن	hope to	يأمل أن

Examples:

- The problem may be solved in a number of different ways.
- This question can't be easily answered.
- His room should be regularly cleaned.
- A visit had to be paid to the wounded soldiers.
- I'm to be rewarded for my great efforts.
- Many exams were to be answered before the final one.
- The building appears to be used as a post office.
- Our car is supposed to be checked before travelling.
- I expected her to be severely punished.

- If we want to say who or what did the action, we use by:

إذا أردنا ذكر الفاعل فى الجملة المبنية للمجهول نضعه آخر الجملة مسبوقًا بـ by.

- I think the new park will be used by all the children in the area.

Check Point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The machine .... for cutting bread.
   a) can use b) can be used
   c) is using d) should use
2. The house .... tomorrow.
   a) will paint b) was being painted
   c) is going to be painted d) is painted
3. These tablets .... before meals.
   a) should take b) should be taken
   c) are being taken d) are taking
4. This museum .... as it is very old.
   a) was being demolished b) is demolished
   c) should demolish d) ought to be demolished
5. Something .... about the problem of pollution.
   a) has to be done b) must do
   c) should do d) is going to do



Extra Points

- الأفعال اللازمة (التى لا تأخذ مفعولًا) لا تحول إلى المبنى للمجهول.

▸ Heat and light come from the sun.

- بعض الأفعال المتعدية لا تحول للمجهول وهى: have, fit, suit, etc.

▸ I have a shower every morning. (Not: ~~A shower is had by me.~~)

- فى حالة الأفعال المتبوعة بـ (v. + ing) نستخدم (being + P.P.).

▸ I hate people telling me lies.

▸ I hate being told lies.

- إذا كان الفاعل والمفعول واحدًا مع الفعل (let) نستخدم ضميرًا منعكسا ثم (be) ثم (P.P.).

▸ He doesn't let others laugh at him.

▸ He doesn't let himself be laughed at.

- نستخدم with ثم المادة المصنوع منها الشيء أو الأداة المستخدمة أو المقادير.

▸ The lock is being broken with a hammer.

▸ The kite will be made by Omar. It will be made with paper, paint and string.

▸ The tiger is going to be shot with a gun.

- عند استخدام المبنى للمجهول فى الأسئلة نستخدم by مع who, whom, which, what فى آخر السؤال.

▸ Who takes your children to school? (Active)

▸ Who are your children taken to school by? (Passive)

- عند استخدام المبنى للمجهول بعد حروف الجر نستخدم (being + P.P.).

▸ The children cried loudly as they were afraid of being bitten by the insect.

▸ My friend is looking forward to being chosen for the football team.

- الفعلان want, need فى المجهول إما يأخذان (to be + P.P.) أو (v-ing).

▸ My shoes need polishing/to be polished.



Grammar Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A lot of money .... on food, medicine and education every year.
   a) are spent b) were spent c) had been spent d) is spent
2. I can see dust coming out of the window. Are the windows ....?
   a) being cleaned b) cleaned c) cleaning d) be cleaned
3. Egypt .... by thousands of British tourists this summer.
   a) is visited b) will be visited c) can visit d) is visiting
4. I'm working at home today because my office ....
   a) is painted b) will be painted
   c) is painting d) is being painted
5. My brother wants .... by someone when he paints the house.
   a) to be helped b) to helping c) be helped d) to help
6. This museum .... by over 1,000 people every day.
   a) is visiting b) is being visited c) is visited d) will be visited
7. The street lights on the motorway ....
   a) being repaired b) will repair
   c) are repairing d) are being repaired
8. The arrangement for the party .... tomorrow.
   a) will discuss b) may discuss
   c) will be discussed d) will be discussing
9. All the questions .... on the paper.
   a) will answer b) must answer
   c) have to answer d) must be answered
10. The new supermarket chain .... next May.
    a) will launch b) is going to be launched
    c) is launching d) is launched
11. In Japan, buildings .... to withstand earthquakes.
    a) have constructed b) are constructing
    c) are constructed d) had constructed
12. This secret should not .... to anyone.
    a) be revealed b) reveal c) being revealed d) have revealed

13. Most children are strongly .... by their parents.
   a) influence   b) influenced   c) influencing   d) being influenced
14. Don't worry, you .... by a very famous lawyer.
   a) will represent   b) representing
   c) represent   d) will be represented
15. We always eat when the food ....
   a) is prepared   b) was prepared   c) prepares   d) prepared
16. Today, almost any information you need .... on the internet.
   a) finding   b) to be found   c) can found   d) can be found
17. The Summer Olympics .... every four years.
   a) are held   b) hold   c) are holding   d) will be held
18. Be careful, your name .... in two minutes.
   a) is calling   b) is called   c) is going to call   d) will be called
19. Coloured clothes .... separately.
   a) must wash   b) must be washed   c) should wash   d) are washing
20. The astronauts .... a lot of training about how to examine and fix the equipment.
   a) giving   b) gives   c) are given   d) given
21. Tomorrow afternoon, the astronaut .... with two other astronauts to a secret location.
   a) is taken   b) is being taken   c) will take   d) is taking
22. The astronaut thinks the leak .... quite quickly.
   a) will repair   b) is going to repair
   c) is repaired   d) will be repaired
23. There are two or three little things that .... at.
   a) need to be looked   b) will look
   c) are looking   d) need to look
24. Is the exercise .... now?
   a) going to do   b) doing   c) done   d) being done
25. The amount of energy we use every year ....
   a) can reduce   b) must be reduced
   c) must reduce   d) must be reducing
26. A new space station .... in the future.
   a) will build   b) is built
   c) will probably be built   d) should build

27 I've seen the plans. Two new hotels .... near the beach next year.
a) are going to be built
b) are built
c) are building
d) will be built

28 Could your maths problem ....?
a) be solved b) solve c) be solving d) being solved

29 A lot of bread .... at the baker's today.
a) is baking b) will bake c) must bake d) is being baked

30 The hotel rooms .... next month.
a) will decorate
b) need to decorate
c) will be decorated
d) are decorated

31 Meat .... well before it is eaten.
a) can cook b) was cooking c) should cook d) should be cooked

32 I think fewer letters .... in the future.
a) are written b) will be written c) will write d) can write

33 The TV programme about space .... at the moment.
a) is being shown b) is shown c) is showing d) will be shown

34 More electric cars .... than last year.
a) will sell b) are selling c) are being sold d) being sold

35 Don't put those old batteries in the bin. They .... to a special place.
a) were taken b) should take c) can take d) should be taken

36 He .... where to park the car when he gets there.
a) will be told b) is telling c) will tell d) is being told

37 Many new ways of saving energy .... by scientists at the moment.
a) will be developed
b) are being developed
c) are developed
d) are developing

38 When you arrive at the hotel, you .... to your room.
a) will show
b) will have been shown
c) will be shown
d) are showing

39 Our team is expected .... the next match.
a) to win b) to will win c) to have won d) that it will win

40 Let's hurry; the plane .... off.
a) be taken b) will be taken c) is going to take d) takes

41 Don't worry. The mail .... in two hours.
a) will arrive b) will be arrived c) is arrived d) is being arrived

42 Rainforests .... in the areas where it rains a lot.
a) are grown b) grow c) will be grown d) growing



43 I remember .... to the national theatre when I was young.
a) to take b) taking c) taken d) being taken

44 Don't let yourself .... by others.
a) cheat b) to be cheated c) be cheated d) to cheat

45 Naturally, people object to .... like animals.
a) treat b) be treated c) be treating d) being treated

Previous Exams Exercises

46 Doctors .... to do their best in case of emergency. (ث ع ٢٠١٩)
a) are asked b) have asked c) asked d) are asking

47 Elderly people .... cruelly. (ث ع ٢٠١٩ دور ثان)
a) should have treated b) should be treating
c) shouldn't treat d) shouldn't be treated

48 Yehia Haqqi .... of as the father of the Egyptian modern short story and novel. (ث ع ٢٠١١)
a) still is thinking b) still is thought
c) is still thought d) is still thinking

49 I don't like .... at. (ث ع ٢٠١٥)
a) people laughing b) having laughed
c) being laughed d) people laughed

50 I wouldn't like .... given instructions. (ث ع ٢٠١٧)
a) to be b) being c) has been d) had been

51 In the future, computers .... smaller. (السودان ٢٠١٧)
a) will make b) will be making c) will have made d) will be made

52 The car needs .... (الأزهر ٢٠١٨)
a) wash b) to wash c) washed d) to be washed

Language Functions

Agreeing and disagreeing with an opinion: الموافقة وعدم الموافقة على رأى:

Agreeing with an opinion	Disagreeing with an opinion
• I (completely) agree. • I couldn't agree more. • (Yes), you're quite right. • I'd go along with that. • That's true.	• I (completely) disagree. • I don't agree. • I'm not (so) sure. • That's (just) not true.

Skills Exercises

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Dreams have interested, puzzled, and even frightened people. They thought that dreams always came true, and that they came from something outside the person dreaming. Since the end of the 19th century, physicians, psychologists and other scientists have been studying dreams. Although they still have much to learn, they think that dreams are created by the dreamer himself. Most persons have dreams in which their dearest wish is granted, or in which they become somebody they would like to be. These are wish-fulfilling dreams. They occasionally dream they are being chased by robbers, or are in danger of fire or flood. These frightening dreams are called nightmares. People usually have nightmares when they are upset about something. Studies about the causes of dreams show many reasons. For example, changes in the brain occur during sleep, and these are probably related to dreaming. But no one knows enough yet about the brain changes in dreaming to say exactly what they are. A dreamer's health affects his dreams. A person who is ill will have different kinds of dreams from those of one who is well. If a person is hungry, or cold, or tired, his dreams may include these feelings. In addition, a large part of any dream comes from the events of the day before. Often the person or situations in a night dream are those the dreamer met during the day. The feelings of happiness or disappointment which came out in dreams were probably in the dreamer before. All the dream does is to give them an outlet.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Why are people frightened of dreams?

a) Because they thought that dreams always came true.
b) Because the dreams always come true.
c) Because dreams change to be nightmares.
d) Because they suffer a lot during the dreams.

2. Since when have psychologists been studying dreams?

a) Since dreams began to be frightening.
b) Since people began to suffer from dreams.
c) Since the beginning of the 20^{th} century.
d) Since the end of the 19^{th} century.



3. **How much do scientists know about the brain changes in dreaming?**
   a) They know nothing.
   b) They don't know much.
   c) They know everything.
   d) They say there are no brain changes.
4. **What does the underlined pronoun "them" in the last line refer to?**
   a) Dreamers.
   b) The causes of dreams.
   c) Feelings of happiness or disappointment.
   d) Dreams.

B) Answer the following questions:

5. Mention two of those who can study dreams.
6. Give two examples of the frightening dreams which are called nightmares.
7. There are many reasons for dreams. (Mention two of them.)
8. What kinds of dreams do you usually have? (Mention two kinds.)

2 Write an essay of about (180) words on the following topic:

"The youth should be given more roles to share in our country's progress."

3 Translation:

A) Translate into Arabic:

1. It is believed that many of the inventions we use today were used or developed first in space. An example of this is the most modern means of communication.
2. Psychologists have made us believe that differences between men and women are mainly due to the way we are brought up. Women can be trained to do jobs that men traditionally do.
3. Many people support space exploration because we may need to live in space in the future. Even science fiction films show a lot of different planets and creatures in space.
4. Public speaking is an art; and it has to be learnt, both in practice and in theory. This is like saying that man will never go into the water until he has learnt to swim.
5. Technology is beneficial because it makes our lives more convenient and improves our work conditions. However, it can cause some environmental problems.



6. Scientific researches have proved that the early experiences of childhood are from the essentials of man's character along life. Therefore, this stage should be given much importance and care. (الأزهر (معدلة) ٢٠٠٦)

B) Translate into English:

١- يعتبر بعض الناس استكشاف الفضاء سبيلًا للتقدم بينما يعتبره آخرون مضيعة للوقت وإهدارًا للمال الذى يجب أن ينفق فى حل مشكلات العالم كالتلوث ونقص الغذاء.

٢- بالرغم من الآثار الجانبية لسياحة الفضاء فإن المغامرة ستدفع الكثيرين له فكثير من الأغنياء على استعداد لدفع الملايين للقيام بهذه المغامرة.

٣- إن ترديد الهتافات والأغانى ليس على الإطلاق الطريقة المثلى للتعبير عن الانتماء للوطن بل العمل الجاد والمثابرة فى تطوره ورخائه أفضل الطرق لذلك.

٤- اعتاد المصريون على المشروعات الكبرى التى تدل على عظمة وإبداع هذا الشعب فقناة السويس والسد العالى أكبر مثالين على هذه المشروعات التى تحمل المصريون كل مصاعبها.

Enrich your Vocabulary

beneficial	نافع	essentials	ضروريات
cheers	هتافات	ideal	المثلى
conditions	ظروف	loyalty	الانتماء
convenient	مناسب	means	وسائل
creatures	مخلوقات	persistence	المثابرة
differences	اختلافات/فروق	psychologists	علماء النفس
effective	فعّال	stage	مرحلة



Open General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. These vitamins are essential for a healthy nervous ....
   a) process b) formula
   c) system d) procedure
2. The experts who .... the painting believe it is genuine.
   a) inspected b) examined
   c) analysed d) reviewed
3. Mr. George is an experienced priest and he is the head of the British .... in Kenya.
   a) mission b) task
   c) job d) school
4. The girl was too shy to start a .... with anyone in the new class.
   a) gossip b) rumour
   c) debate d) conversation
5. They are doing what they can to improve the bad .... they are in.
   a) situation b) location
   c) post d) space
6. My friend's mother always wished to .... her from the rough children in the street they live in.
   a) improve b) close
   c) distance d) mix
7. According to laws, punishment increases according to the .... of the crime.
   a) number b) gravity
   c) period d) place
8. The police confirmed that an inquiry was .... into the incident.
   a) launched b) resulted
   c) applied d) replied
9. A silkworm .... a cover that can give 800 metres of pure silk.
   a) orbits b) revolves
   c) activates d) spins
10. These paintings are a .... of Egyptian art in the early 20th century.
    a) role b) form
    c) representative d) shape

11 My mother .... in a school. She's a teacher.
a) works
b) is working
c) has worked
d) worked

12 You put too .... sugar in my tea. I can't drink it.
a) many
b) enough
c) much
d) a lot of

13 Hesham .... move to Alexandria, but he decided to stay in Matrouh.
a) will
b) was going to
c) is going to
d) doesn't

14 I .... to driving on the left now, but it was hard at the beginning.
a) didn't use
b) used
c) 'm not used
d) got used

15 "I'm going to the bus station." ".................. am I. I'll give you a lift."
a) So
b) Nor
c) Neither
d) Didn't

16 I often drive my .... car.
a) father
b) fathers
c) father's
d) fathers'

17 When my older sister passed her driving test, she was pleased with ....
a) she
b) herself
c) her
d) hers

18 I wish the neighbour's dog would stop ....!
a) with barking
b) to bark
c) bark
d) barking

19 I was hungry, ... I made a sandwich.
a) so
b) so that
c) because
d) although

20 My sister isn't .... to go to school.
a) too old
b) old
c) old enough
d) so old

Test 6 Based on Unit 6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. All students .... to study their lessons regularly.
   a) are advising b) are advised c) advise d) will advise
2. The explosion was caused by a gas .... in the main pipe line in the city.
   a) lake b) luck c) lock d) leak
3. People .... to use public transport if we want to reduce our carbon emissions.
   a) need to encourage b) encourage
   c) need to be encouraged d) encouraged
4. I can't drive you to the airport because my car .... at the moment.
   a) is being serviced b) is serviced
   c) will be serviced d) must service
5. Astronauts' stay in space depends on the purpose of the ....
   a) massage b) message c) mission d) course
6. In the future, petrol .... as much as it is today.
   a) will use b) won't be used c) is using d) won't use
7. The fashion house is now .... some new winter dresses.
   a) launching b) lunching c) condemning d) coaching
8. Trees .... along our street by volunteers.
   a) plant b) are planting
   c) are being planted d) should plant
9. I remember my uncle using a/an .... wheel to make wool hats.
   a) twisting b) orbit c) turning d) spinning
10. Decisions .... quickly by the government especially in difficult situations.
    a) should make b) shouldn't make
    c) shouldn't be made d) will make
11. Hurry up, the gates .... at 9:00 pm.
    a) will lock b) locking c) locked d) will be locked
12. Who is this mess .... by?
    a) making b) going to make
    c) being made d) going to be made
13. Our neighbours invited us to a party to celebrate their wedding ....
    a) memorial b) memory c) reminding d) anniversary

14 As he was found .... the scene of the robbery, he was arrested.
a) near b) nearly c) nearer d) nearby

15 She needed time and space to achieve her ambition in life."Space" here means ....
a) distance b) area c) freedom d) place

16 The more books he reads, the .... he becomes at reading.
a) good b) better c) best d) well

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

If you want to be healthy and fit you need to follow certain rules, whether you're a boy, a girl, young or old. People are advised to eat healthy food. It is really important if you want to be a healthy one. You don't need to go on a diet, just pay attention to what you're putting in your body. You can eat three meals a day or 5-6 mini-meals a day. NEVER skip meals. Try healthy alternatives, instead of having a bowl of ice-cream, go for a frozen yogurt. Drink more water. This is basically the most important thing of all. If you drink more water you will be much healthier because it flushes the toxins out of your body and gives your skin a healthy glow.

It's important to exercise more whether it's walking in the park, or cycling do at least 20 minutes of physical activity several times a week. You should not exercise every day. Exercise will make you stronger and strengthen your muscles. You can go to the gym and swim or run. Exercising will make you healthier and happier about your body. It also reduces stress and helps to calm the mind!

During adolescence, you'll find you need more sleep. Sure, it's tempting to stay up late chatting with friends on the phone or computer, but the next morning you'll be miserable. You need to get a minimum of 8 hours of sleep every night. It may be tough if you get back late and have to wake up early on a normal school day, but if you put things in the right way, you will feel much more refreshed the next morning. This will help your concentration and you will be in a much happier and friendly mood.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What do you need to be healthy?
a) Go on a diet. b) Follow certain rules.
c) Neglect meals. d) Drink little water.

2. What can you eat instead of an ice cream?

a) 5-6 mini-meals.
b) A kilo of meat.
c) A frozen yogurt.
d) Three meals.

3. What can exercising do to us?

a) Makes you healthier and happier.
b) Gives us stress.
c) Reduces the peace of mind.
d) Weakens our muscles.

4. What does "<u>put things in the right way</u>" mean?

a) Chat a lot with friends.
b) Make extra effort.
c) Get up early.
d) Sleep well.

B) Answer the following questions:

5. What will exercise do to your body? (Mention two points.)
6. There are a lot of advantages to getting enough sleep. (Mention two of them.)
7. Give two reasons why water is important to our bodies.
8. How do you think we can keep healthy? (Mention two.)

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

Satellites are used to study the Earth and other planets in the solar system and to facilitate communication between people. They are important for weather forecast, military support, navigation and land photography.

B) Translate into English:

"لك مصر العديد من الأقمار الصناعية فى الفضاء، مثل النايل سات المختص بالبث الفضائى، و الأقمار الخاصة بالاستشعار
ن بعد، من أجل البحث والتطوير، ولقد وصل عدد الأقمار الكبيرة التى تمتلكها مصر لـ ٧ أقمار.

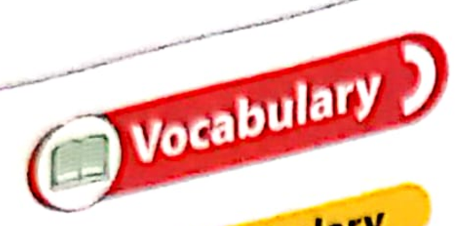
4 Write an essay of about (180) words on the following topic:

"Some people think that space exploration is a waste of money while others consider it a means of advance."




Unit 7
Arthur C. Clarke:
2001: A Space Odyssey
Objectives
Listening : Listening for specific information and listening for detail
Grammar : Past passive and present perfect passive forms
Reading : Reading for gist, reading for detail and guessing the meaning of words
Critical thinking : Appreciating science fiction; understanding the importance of exploration
Functions : Talking about advantages and disadvantages
Writing : Writing about the history of space travel





Key Vocabulary

(be) about to	يوشك أن
consultant (n)	مستشار
controls (n)	أجهزة تشغيل وتحكم
director (n)	مخرج/مدير
emergency (n)	طوارئ
foundation (n)	أساس/مؤسسة
horrified (adj)	مذعور/مرعوب
interrupt (v) (ed)	يقاطع/يعترض
physics (n)	علم الفيزياء
pressure (n)	الضغط
radar (n)	جهاز رادار
technician (n)	(فنى) شخص
threaten (v) (ed)	يهدد
zero-gravity (n)	انعدام الجاذبية

Vocabulary on Listening

archaeology (n)	علم الآثار
chemical (adj) (n)	كيميائى/مادة كيميائية
develop (v) (ed)	يطور
developing countries	الدول النامية
editor (n)	محرر صحفى/رئيس تحرير
electrical (adj)	كهربى
fact (n)	حقيقة
fiction (n)	خيال/قصص خيالية
goods (n)	بضائع
graduate (v) (d)	يتخرج
illness (n)	مرض
odyssey (n)	ملحمة
popular (adj)	محبوب/مشهور
prefer (v) (red)	يفضّل
promote (v) (d)	يرقى/يطور
publish (v) (ed)	ينشر
quality (n)	نوعية/جودة
science fiction (n)	خيال علمى
scientific (adj)	علمى
Second World War	الحرب العالمية الثانية
skill (n)	مهارة
spaceship (n)	سفينة فضاء
wheelchair (n)	كرسى متحرك

Vocabulary on Reading

Word	Meaning
awake (adj)	مستيقظ
breathe (v) (d)	يتنفس
check (v) (ed)	يفحص/يراجع
contact (n) (v) (ed)	اتصال/يتصل
disappear (v) (ed)	يختفى
extremely (adv)	للغاية
fail (v) (ed)	يفشل
fall (v)	يسقط/ينخفض
intelligent (adj)	ذكى
journey (n)	رحلة طويلة
message (n)	رسالة
oxygen (n)	أكسجين
refuse (v) (d)	يرفض
replace (v) (d)	يستبدل
send (v)	يرسل
strange (adj)	غريب
summary (n)	ملخص
the inside (n)	الجزء الداخلى
the outside (n)	الجزء الخارجى
turn off (v) (ed)	يغلق (جهاز)
wire (n)	سلك
wonder (v) (ed)	يتساءل/يتعجب

Critical Thinking, Communication & Workbook Vocabulary

Word	Meaning
ambulance (n)	سيارة إسعاف
artificial intelligence (n)	الذكاء الاصطناعى
beach (n)	شاطئ
cons (n)	عيوب
downside (n)	عيب
electrician (n)	فنى كهرباء
energy (n)	طاقة
example (n)	مثال
exist (v) (ed)	يوجد/يتواجد
float (v) (ed)	يطفو
hurt (v)	يؤذى/يجرح
laboratory (n)	معمل
land (v) (ed)	يهبط
measure (v) (d)	يقيس
Mir Space Station	محطة الفضاء الروسية
occur (v) (red)	يحدث



poisonous (adj)	سام
politician (n)	رجل سياسة
pollution (n	التلوث
position (n)	موضع/مكانة
practical (adj)	عملى
produce (v) (d)	ينتج
pros (n)	مميزات
recharge (v) (d)	يعيد شحن
side (n)	جانب
social media (n)	وسائل التواصل
space shuttle (n)	مكوك فضاء
storm (n)	عاصفة
survive (v) (d)	ينجو/يبقى على قيد الحياة
tent (n)	خيمة
wave (n)	موجة

Focus on Vocabulary

(be) about to يوشك أن	‣ be ready to start doing something
consultant (n) مستشار	‣ someone with a lot of experience in a subject whose job is to give advice about it
controls (n) أجهزة تشغيل وتحكم	‣ parts of a machine that you use to make it work
director (n) مخرج/مدير	‣ someone who gives instructions to actors and other people in a film
emergency (n) طوارئ	‣ relating to an unexpected and dangerous situation
foundation (n) مؤسسة/أساس	‣ an organisation that gives or collects money to be used for special purposes ‣ a base idea or belief that something is based on
horrified (adj) مذعور/مرعوب	‣ horrified/shocked



Word	Definition
interrupt (v) يقاطع/يعترض	to stop a process or activity for a short time
physics (n) الفيزياء	the science that deals with the structure of objects and substances
pressure (n) الضغط	the force that a gas or liquid has when it is inside a container
radar (n) جهاز رادار	a method of finding the position of things such as planes by sending out radio waves
technician (n) فنى	someone who does practical work connected with science or technology
threaten (v) يهدد	to tell someone you will hurt them or cause serious problems for them if they do not do what you want
zero-gravity (n) انعدام الجاذبية	without the force that makes objects fall to the ground

Expressions & Idioms

(be) remembered as	يتم تذكره كـ	give advice	يعطى النصيحة
(be) named after	يسمى باسم	go wrong	يسوء/يتعطل
come true	يتحقق/يصبح حقيقة	lose contact	يفقد الاتصال
for the first time	لأول مرة	send ... into space	يرسل ... إلى الفضاء

Phrases & prepositions

arrive at	يصل إلى	look after	يعتنى بـ
famous for	مشهور بـ	move into	ينتقل الى
graduate in	يتخرج فى	send to	يرسل الى
help with	مساعدة بخصوص	travel to	يسافر الى



Derivatives

Verb	Noun	Adjective
----------------	archaeology علم الآثار archaeologist عالم آثار	archaeological أثرى
consult يستشير	consultant مستشار	consultative استشارى
----------------	fiction خيال/قصص خيالى	fictional خيالى
found يؤسس	foundation أساس/مؤسسة founder مؤسس	----------------
graduate يتخرج	graduation التخرج graduate خريج	----------------
horrify يرعب/يخيف	horror مريع	horrified مذعور/مرعوب horrifying مرعب
interrupt يقاطع/يعترض	interruption مقاطعة/اعتراض	interrupted مقاطع
press يضغط	pressure الضغط	pressurized مضغوط
promote يرقى/يطور	promotion ترقية/تطور	promotional تطورى
summarise يلخص	summary ملخص	----------------
survive ينجو/يبقى على قيد الحياة	survival النجاة/البقاء حيًا survivor ناجى	surviving ناجٍ/باقٍ على قيد الحياة
threaten يهدد	threat تهديد	threatened مهدَد threatening مهدِد

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
emergency	طوارئ	necessity	calmness	هدوء
horrified	مذعور/مرعوب	frightened	calm	هادئ
interrupt	يقاطع/يعترض	disturb	assist	يساعد
pressure	الضغط	stress	ease	راحة
threaten	يهدد	endanger	protect	يحمى
develop	يطور	evolve	decline	يتدهور
fiction	خيال	imagination	non-fiction	واقع
replace	يستبدل	restore	keep	يحفظ/يبقى

Important Language Notes

Suffixes for jobs اللواحق الخاصة بالوظائف

- كثير من الكلمات المعبرة عن الوظائف تتكون من اسم أو فعل باستخدام بعض اللواحق منها:

Examples

Suffix						
ian	technician	فنى	politician	رجل سياسة	historian	مؤرخ
	musician	موسيقى	mathematician	عالم رياضيات	electrician	كهربائى
	optician	أخصائى بصريات	librarian	أمين مكتبة	--------------------	
ist	scientist	عالم	archaeologist	عالم آثار	chemist	صيدلى
	geologist	عالم جيولوجيا	dentist	طبيب أسنان	journalist	صحفى
	florist	بائع زهور	physicist	عالم فيزياء	artist	فنان
er	baker	خباز	farmer	فلاح	gardener	بستانى/جناينى
or	actor	ممثل	conductor	كمسارى	sailor	بحار
ant	accountant	محاسب	assistant	بائع/مساعد	consultant	مستشار

about

- يستخدم الظرف (about) بمعان مختلفة فى اللغة الإنجليزية منها:

about	بالتقريب	- We left the restaurant at about 10:30.
about	يوشك أن	- We were just about to leave when Jerry arrived.
about	تقريبًا	- I was about ready to leave when somebody rang the doorbell.
about	قريب	- Is Yasser about? There's a phone call for him.
about	حول/فى اتجاهات مختلفة	- People were rushing about, trying to find the driver.
about	متواجد/متوفر	- She might get temporary work, but there's not much about.



Other Language Notes



journey | trip | voyage | flight

journey رحلة/سفر: السفر من مكان إلى آخر (وخاصة السفر الطويل برًا).

- They now faced a twelve-hour train journey.

trip رحلة مؤقتة (قصيرة) لغرض معين.

- My father came back from a business trip to China.

لاحظ أن كلمة trip يمكن أن تأتى مع business.

- He's just returned from a fishing trip to Aswan.

voyage رحلة بحرية

- The ship *Titanic* sank on its first voyage.

flight رحلة جوية

- What was the direction of the flight when the plane crashed?

prefer

prefer + (v-ing/noun) .... to + (v-ing/noun) يفضّل .... عن ....

(would) prefer + to + Inf. .... rather than + Inf. يفضّل أن .... عن أن ....

- He prefers watching tennis to playing it.
- I prefer English to physics.
- I'd prefer to stay at home rather than go out.

position | location

position موضع (مثل الوقوف أو الجلوس مثلًا) مكانة/وظيفة/مركز فى الملعب.

- First, get yourself into a comfortable position.
- I'm not sure what I would do if I were in your position.

location موقع/مكان (للتصوير مثلًا)

- We have not found a suitable location for the new offices.
- Most of the movie was shot on location in Africa.

develop

developing **developed**

develop (v) — يتطور/ينمو (فعل لازم بدون مفعول أو متعد)
- It's hard to believe that a tree can develop from a small seed.
- The area is working to develop its tourist industry.

developing (adj) — نامٍ (فى مراحل التطور)
- Children in many developing countries lack basic medical care.

developed (adj) — متطور بالفعل/متقدم
- The developed world has a responsibility towards poorer countries.

breathe

breath **breeze**

breathe — يتنفس
- It was wonderful to be outside and breathe some fresh air.

breath — نفس/تنفس
- Sabry took a deep breath, then jumped into the pool.

breeze — النسيم
- A fresh breeze is blowing from the north.

coast

shore **beach**

coast — ساحل (مساحة اليابسة المجاورة أو القريبة من البحر)
- Alexandria is an important city on the Mediterranean coast.

shore — شاطئ
- My uncle lives in a small house by the shore.

beach — البلاج (شاطئ ممهد)
- In the summer the beaches get very crowded.



Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The airline's .... schedule has been changed because of the bad weather.
   a) trip b) voyage c) journey d) flight
2. I didn't know you played hockey. In what .... do you play?
   a) site b) location c) position d) sight
3. It's terribly smoky in here – I'm just going out for a .... of fresh air.
   a) breathe b) breath c) breeze d) braze
4. I spent the day on the .... with my family.
   a) coast b) shore c) beach d) cliff
5. The standard of living in many .... countries is low.
   a) develop b) developed c) developing d) development
6. He was an effective ...., but he had no ambition to become a party leader.
   a) politics b) politic c) politician d) political
7. He prefers watching football .... playing it.
   a) to b) by c) for d) from
8. People were rushing ...., trying to find medical help.
   a) down b) about c) in d) into



Listening Text

Narrator:

Today, I'm going to give a talk about one of the most famous writers of science fiction[1]: Arthur C. Clarke. He was born in England in 1917, the son of a farmer. He was always interested in science, but his father died and his family did not have much money, so Clarke had to find work as soon as he finished school. He got a job with the government, although he wrote for science magazines in his free time.

He was able to develop his skills in science during the Second World War, when he worked with radar[2]. This system was being used for the first time, to help planes to land. Many science articles by Clarke had been published in magazines before the war ended. He predicted satellite television in one article. Later, his science fiction stories were also published in magazines.

(1) خيال علمى

(2) رادار



Clarke decided to go to university after the war and he graduated in maths and physics[3]. He became the editor of a science magazine and continued to write articles and stories. Many of his stories were about people travelling into space in rockets. Soon he was famous as a writer and also as a scientific consultant[4]. Scientists and technicians knew that Clarke could be asked about spaceships and satellites, and he was happy to talk about his ideas.

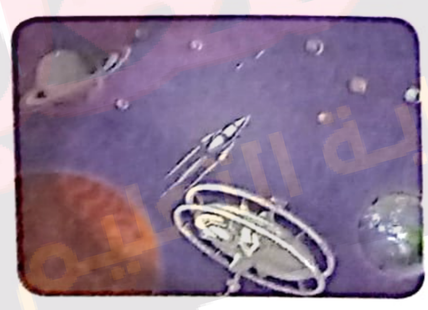
(3) الفيزياء
(4) مستشار
(5) مخرج
(6) مؤسسة

In 1964, Clarke was asked to work on a film for the famous director[5] Stanley Kubrick. The director wanted to make a film of one of Clarke's short stories. This became *2001: A Space Odyssey*. The film, about travelling far into space, has been watched by many millions of people since it was made in 1968.

After a serious illness, Clarke was in a wheelchair for many years and he died in 2008, but he is remembered as a great scientist as well as a writer. The Arthur C. Clarke Foundation[6] has promoted the use of technology to improve the quality of life in developing countries, and there are now parts of space that have been named after him.

Reading Text

2001: A Space Odyssey



Only two men were awake on the spaceship *Discovery*. Their names were David Bowman and Frank Poole. Their job was to look after the spaceship and the three other astronauts, who were sleeping during the long journey to the planet Saturn. Bowman and Poole were helped by Hal, an extremely intelligent computer. One morning, Poole was watching a video message that had been sent to him by his family on earth. It was interrupted[1] by Hal, who said that part AE35 of the spaceship was about to fail. Part AE35 was important because it sent messages to earth.

(1) يقاطع/يعترض
(2) انعدام الجاذبية
(3) على وشك أن

Poole went outside the spaceship to replace the part. He was used to working in zero-gravity[2] so he changed the part easily. However, when Bowman checked the old part later, he found nothing wrong. That afternoon, Hal told them that the new part AE35 was also about to[3] fail. The men were not used to hearing that there

were problems with the spaceship and they thought that this was strange, so they contacted earth. They were told that something was wrong with Hal and that they should turn the computer off. Suddenly, they lost contact with earth. Part AE35 was not working.

Poole decided to replace the new part AE35, but while he was outside, the spaceship suddenly moved forward and hit him. He was killed. Bowman was horrified[4] and wondered if Poole was killed by Hal. He decided to wake up the other astronauts, but to do this, he needed Hal's help. At first, Hal refused, but when Bowman threatened[5] to cut Hal's wires, the computer finally agreed. Bowman started to wake up the other astronauts, but suddenly he felt the inside of the spaceship become very cold. The pressure[6] inside the spaceship was falling fast and all the air was disappearing. Bowman ran to an emergency[7] room so he could breathe some oxygen. He now understood that the computer that had been built to help him was trying to kill him. He had to find Hal's controls[8] so that he could turn off the computer.

(4) مذعور/مرعوب ....
(5) هدد ....
(6) ضغط ....
(7) طوارئ ....
(8) أجهزة تشغيل وتحكم

Notes on some sentences from (Listening & Reading) texts

1 .... so Clarke had to find work as soon as he finished school.

- لاحظ استخدام جملة فى زمن الماضى البسيط وليس الماضى التام بعد (as soon as) وذلك لعدم وجود فارق زمنى.

2 He predicted satellite television in one article.

- بعض الأفعال فى اللغة الإنجليزية يتضمن معناها حرف جر فالفعل (predict) معناه يتنبأ بـ

3 He was used to working in zero-gravity ....

The men were not used to hearing that

- لم نستخدم صيغة الفعل فى المصدر بعد (used to) لأنه يسبقها (was - were).

4 .... while he was outside, the spaceship suddenly moved forward and hit him.

- لم يستخدم زمن الماضى المستمر بعد (while) لأن (verb to be) لا يستخدم فى هذا الزمن.

5 .... suddenly he felt the inside of the spaceship become very cold.

- يتبع أفعال الإدراك مثل (see, watch, hear, listen, feel, smell, notice, observe) فعل فى صيغة المصدر للتعبير عن إدراك الحدث كاملًا أما إذا استخدمنا (verb + ing) نعبر عن إدراكه لفترة من الوقت.

I felt the ground shaking for about half a minute.

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Spielberg is considered one of the best .... in Hollywood throughout history.
   a) players b) clients c) directors d) customers
2. The professor also acted as a .... to the Department of Education.
   a) consultant b) producer c) spectator d) protector
3. The submarine is impossible to detect on .... if it dives deep under water.
   a) phones b) radar c) laser d) photography
4. Magdi Yaccoub's Heart .... succeeded in establishing a centre in Aswan.
   a) Company b) Party c) Corporation d) Foundation
5. The company hired a/an .... to help maintain the office's computers.
   a) electrician b) politician c) technician d) musician
6. It is believed that Einstein, the great scientist, reshaped modern .... with his theories.
   a) history b) geography c) maths d) physics
7. The copilot was at the .... when the plane landed.
   a) sockets b) controls c) wires d) machines
8. People were .... by what had happened at the train accident.
   a) horrified b) pleased c) fantastic d) relaxed
9. I'm sorry to ...., but there's a telephone call for you.
   a) explain b) talk c) tell d) interrupt
10. All space experiments are conducted in zero .... conditions.
    a) temperature b) gravity c) heat d) weather
11. Many workers feel that their jobs are .... because of the economic problems of their factory.
    a) threatened b) advised c) discussed d) replied
12. All big supermarkets have exits which should be used in .... such as a fire.
    a) rain b) emergency c) race d) flow
13. You'll need a qualified .... to rewire your house.
    a) artist b) actor c) electrician d) author
14. A .... is someone who works in a pharmacy preparing and selling medicines.
    a) scientist b) chemist c) physicist d) musician
15. My uncle runs a small company which .... and markets new computer software.
    a) does b) has c) takes d) develops
16. Novels are usually works of .... but they are often based on real life.
    a) fiction b) fictional c) fact d) reality

17 This job requires someone with good communication .... who can speak and write fluently in Arabic and English.
a) skills b) ideals c) publicity d) achievement

18 One tyre of my car is flat, I have to .... it with another one.
a) buy b) replace c) place d) display

19 I .... if I'll recognise Hady after all these years.
a) wander b) exclaim c) wonder d) announce

20 When I was at school, I always .... my bag before going to bed.
a) looked b) researched c) checked d) saw

21 My uncle, who's a businessman, makes about 20 business .... a year.
a) trips b) discoveries c) picnics d) voyages

22 Everyone should avoid snakes because they may be ....
a) poison b) infectious c) poisonous d) affected

23 The accident .... at eight o'clock when everyone was on their way to work.
a) occurred b) took c) came d) caused

24 My favourite .... when I play football is goalkeeper.
a) place b) point c) location d) position

25 The batteries of these torches must be .... for six or seven hours.
a) recharged b) bought c) sold d) mended

26 The boat was smashed by huge .... Thankfully, no one was injured.
a) thunder b) wages c) waves d) wolves

27 This book is full of interesting .... about the World Cup.
a) facts b) teams c) novels d) fictions

28 Arthur C. Clarke was the .... of a science magazine as well as a writer of articles and stories.
a) musician b) editor c) seller d) artist

29 Samir felt lost as he was living in a/an .... city.
a) inside b) curious c) nearby d) strange

30 There was a meeting to .... trade between Egypt and China in a wide scale.
a) reduce b) charge c) end d) promote

31 The young man will be in a/an .... for the rest of his life after the accident.
a) wheelchair b) armchair c) stick d) bench

32 The room filled with smoke, and it has become difficult to ....
a) breath b) breathe c) breeze d) blaze

33 The police are looking for the two girls who .... while walking home from school.
a) appeared b) missed c) disappeared d) lost

34 Unfortunately, the doctors .... to save the injured man's life.
a) passed b) succeeded c) managed d) failed

35 We were surprised to hear such a/an .... question coming from a very small child.
a) intelligent b) stupid c) obvious d) single

36 The boy was hurt when the car .... forward at a great speed.
a) moved b) walked c) crept d) flew

37 I've made a .... of the main points in the minister's speech.
a) detail b) book c) summary d) rumour

38 This sign warns people not to touch these uncovered electric ....
a) wires b) ropes c) stakes d) strings

39 .... intelligence is the science of how to make computers do things that usually need human intelligence.
a) Normal b) Artificial c) Natural d) Industrial

40 The .... of the book is that it is written in a rather boring style.
a) upside b) advantage c) merit d) downside

41 A space .... is a vehicle that travels into space and back to Earth and lands like a plane.
a) shuttle b) rocket c) wheel d) station

42 Only 12 of the 140 passengers on the plane .... the crash.
a) succeeded b) passed c) survived d) failed

43 Most young men and women keep in touch with their friends through social ....
a) studies b) chats c) media d) videos

44 The footballer had to be taken by .... to hospital after he was injured in the match.
a) taxi b) boat c) vehicle d) ambulance

45 Astronauts are trained on ....in spaceships because of lack of gravity.
a) floating b) diving c) flying d) sinking

46 We can .... the energy that food provides in calories.
a) count b) measure c) extract d) appreciate

47 Applicants of the job should have training and .... experience in electronics.
a) practical b) valueless c) horrible d) terrible

48 One of the best ways of reducing .... is to use cars less.
a) population b) warming c) pollution d) heat

49 A .... is a shelter consisting of a sheet of cloth supported by poles and ropes, used for camping.
a) cottage b) lodge c) castle d) tent

50 Zahi Hawas is one of the most important figures of .... in Egypt.
a) archaeology b) chemistry c) literature d) mathematics

51 The blue whale is the largest creature that has ever .... on earth.
a) died b) existed c) vanished d) accepted

52 My daughter .... with a BA in English last year and now works as a teacher in a primary school.
a) learnt b) employed c) taught d) graduated

Exercises

Expressions, idioms, prepositions, derivatives, synonyms and antonyms

53. The verb "replace" can be the opposite to the verb "..................".
a) keep b) damage c) affect d) defy
54. This .... is often used to make cleaning products.
a) chemical b) alchemy c) chemistry d) chemist
55. The actress contacted the police because she had been receiving .... phone calls.
a) threaten b) threat c) threatening d) threatened
56. Mother asked my little brother if he needed any help .... his maths homework.
a) for b) about c) with d) at
57. Before going on a diet, it is advisable to .... your doctor.
a) consult b) consulting c) consultant d) consultative
58. It has become very hard to deal with the .... of everyday life.
a) press b) pressed c) pressure d) pressurized
59. We think football can help to .... the idea of a peaceful and co-existent society.
a) promote b) promotion c) promotional d) promoting
60. Facebook and Twitter can help you if you .... contact with a friend or neighbour.
a) lose b) miss c) break d) remember
61. The street is named .... the famous South African leader, Nelson Mandela.
a) at b) before c) on d) after
62. Being a doctor was my best dream that .... true.
a) came b) went c) got d) fell
63. The word "protect" is an antonym to the word "..................".
a) prevent b) threaten c) accept d) apply
64. The word "imagination" is similar in meaning to ....
a) application b) fact c) fiction d) necessity
65. NASA is planning to send more and more spaceships .... space.
a) for b) into c) at d) about
66. We believe that all governments should support and invest in .... research.
a) science b) scientist c) scientific d) scientifically
67. My uncle was a great .... who was a member in the parliament for many years.
a) politic b) politics c) political d) politician
68. The noun "stress" is a synonym to the noun "..................".
a) physics b) relaxation c) pressure d) ease

Previous Exams *Exercises*

69. The boss .... to dismiss him if he continued to turn up late for work. (الأزهر ٢٠١٩)
a) risked b) endangered c) threatened d) promised
70. The ability to work under .... is one of the soft skills. (ث.ع ٢٠١٩)
a) pleasure b) pressure c) rain d) gain



Passive forms: Past Tenses المبنى للمجهول، أزمنة الماضى

1 Past simple passive المبنى للمجهول فى الماضى البسيط

was/were (not) + past participle

- The government built a new school in the village last year. (Active)
- A new school was built in the village last year. (Passive)

Active المبنى للمعلوم	**Passive** المبنى للمجهول
• Fatma sent the email.	• The email was sent by Fatma.
Passive Interrogative الاستفهام	**Passive Negative** النفى
• Was the email sent by Fatma? • When was the email sent?	• The email wasn't sent by Fatma.

2 Present perfect passive المبنى للمجهول فى المضارع التام

has/have (not) + been + past participle

- Actors have used the hotel in many famous films. (Active)
- The hotel has been used in many famous films. (Passive)

Active المبنى للمعلوم	**Passive** المبنى للمجهول
• Mona has bought some food.	• Some food has been bought by Mona.
Passive Interrogative الاستفهام	**Passive Negative** النفى
• Has some food been bought by Mona? • Who has some food been bought by?	• Some food hasn't been bought by Mona.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The fax machine .... by Alexander Bain.
   a) was inventing b) has been invented
   c) was invented d) invented
2. Ahmed is very polite. He .... well brought up.
   a) will be b) was being
   c) had been d) has been
3. The party invitations .... to all my friends yesterday afternoon.
   a) were sent b) sent
   c) have been sent d) were sending
4. The dog .... fed yet.
   a) wasn't b) has not been
   c) won't be d) can't be
5. Where was the first Football World Cup ....?
   a) holding b) hold c) held d) being held

3 Past continuous passive المبنى للمجهول فى الماضى المستمر

was/were (not) + being + past participle

- They were decorating my house all day yesterday. (Active)
- My house was being decorated all day yesterday. (Passive)

Active المبنى للمعلوم	Passive المبنى للمجهول
• Reem was cleaning the room at 7 a.m. yesterday.	• The room was being cleaned by Reem at 7 a.m. yesterday.
Passive Interrogative الاستفهام	**Passive Negative النفى**
• Was the room being cleaned at 7 a.m. yesterday? • When was the room being cleaned?	• The room wasn't being cleaned by Reem at 7 a.m. yesterday.

Past perfect passive المبنى للمجهول فى الماضى التام

had (not) + been + past participle

- Mother had not made the bread before we went to bed. (Active)
- The bread had not been made before we went to bed. (Passive)

Active المبنى للمعلوم	Passive المبنى للمجهول
• Ali had sent the email by yesterday.	• The email had been sent by yesterday.
Passive Interrogative الاستفهام	**Passive Negative النفى**
• Had the email been sent by yesterday? • When had the email been sent?	• The email hadn't been sent by yesterday.

Check Point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My friend took me in his car while mine .... repaired.
   a) has been b) was being
   c) was d) had been
2. Ahmed was punished because many mistakes .... made by him.
   a) had been b) are
   c) will be d) were being
3. The gate .... painted when it fell over the boy.
   a) has been b) was
   c) was being d) is
4. Had many fish .... by 9 o'clock yesterday?
   a) being caught b) been catching
   c) caught d) been caught
5. Were the bags .... when they were dropped?
   a) been carried b) being carried
   carry carrying

Extra Points

❶ إذا كانت الجملة مبنية للمجهول وبها ضمائر الوصل who/which فيمكن حذف who/which + v. to be وترك التصريف الثالث فقط.

- The meat which was eaten yesterday was delicious.
- The meat ~~which was~~ eaten yesterday was delicious.
- The boy who was punished yesterday was mistaken.
- The boy ~~who was~~ punished yesterday was mistaken.

❷ الأفعال الآتية يتبعها المصدر فى المعلوم (hear, help, see and make) ويسبق المصدر بـ to فى المجهول.

- They saw him leave the building.
- He was seen to leave the building.

ولكن إذا جاء بعد hear, see, watch الفعل به ing فإن الفعل يظل كما هو به ing.

- They saw him running down the stairs.
- He was seen running down the stairs.

❸ بعض الأفعال تأخذ مفعولين (عاقل/غير عاقل) فيمكن البدء بأيهما ولكن إذا بدأت بغير العاقل نضع قبل العاقل to/for.

- He sent me an email.
  - I was sent an email.
  - An email was sent to me.
- He bought me a bike.
  - I was bought a bike.
  - A bike was bought for me.

- ونستخدم (to) مع الأفعال الآتية:

bring	يحضر	lend	يقرض	pass	يمرر/يناول	show	يظهر/يعرض
give	يعطى	offer	يعرض	pay	يدفع	tell	يخبر
hand	يعطى/يناول	owe	يدين	sell	يبيع	write	يكتب

- نستخدم (for) مع الأفعال الآتية:

book	يحجز	call	ينادى/يتصل	find	يجد	leave	يترك
build	يبنى	cut	يقطع	get	يحصل على	make	يصنع
buy	يشترى	fetch	يذهب ليحضر	keep	يحافظ على	save	يوفر

❹ هناك أفعال فى التصريف الثالث تستخدم صفات بعد v. to be وهنا لا تكون مجهولًا.

amazed, broken, interested, pleased, worried, scared, exhausted, delighted, bored, etc.

- The last time I went to the dentist, I was scared. (adjective)
- She was worried all day after hearing the news. (adjective)
- She was exhausted after cleaning the house all day. (adjective)
- Sue was delighted with all her birthday presents. (adjective)
- The students were bored by the lecturer's long speech. (past participle)

❺ يمكن أن نستخدم الفعل (get) بدلًا من (verb to be) عند التحويل إلى المبنى للمجهول خاصة مع التصريف الثالث من الأفعال الآتية:

(catch/arrest /damage /destroy/kill /marry/burn/beat)

- The police caught/arrested the bank robbers.
- The bank robbers got caught/arrested.

Grammar Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. After the letter ...., it was posted.
   a) written b) had written
   c) has written d) had been written
2. The telephone .... by Alexander Graham Bell in 1876.
   a) was inventing b) was invented
   c) had invented d) has been invented
3. I fell asleep while the film ....
   a) was being watched b) watched
   c) was watching d) could be watched
4. My car .... by the mechanic and I can pick it up tomorrow morning.
   a) is repaired b) had repaired
   c) has been repaired d) will repair
5. The Champions League 2010 .... by Inter Milan. They beat Bayern Munich 2–0.
   a) was won b) was being won
   c) won d) had won
6. Look at all the dust in here. It looks as if this room .... for a month.
   a) wasn't cleaned b) isn't cleaned
   c) hasn't been cleaned d) has cleaned
7. The book .... by the boy when the light went out, so he couldn't continue reading it.
   a) is being read b) was being read
   c) was reading d) had been read
8. The car was bought as soon as the money ....
   a) had been saved b) had saved
   c) is saved d) has been saved
9. An early type of glue or paste .... with flour and water.
   a) will be made b) is made
   c) was made d) had made
10. The police report says that 20 cars .... in our area already.
    a) are damaging b) have been damaged
    c) damaged d) were damaging

11 When the earthquake occurred, the pancakes .... in the kitchen.
a) have been made
b) had made
c) were made
d) were being made

12 Why .... before selling the house?
a) hadn't I told
b) I hadn't told
c) I wasn't told
d) hadn't I been told

13 A black and white cat .... from the top of a tree earlier today.
a) has been rescued
b) was rescued
c) was rescuing
d) rescued

14 Many trees .... by the gardener since he was employed.
a) have been planted
b) were planted
c) planted
d) were planting

15 What .... by Tamer on the desk when the teacher saw him?
a) wrote
b) was writing
c) written
d) was being written

16 All the tickets .... before we got to the booking window.
a) have been sold
b) are sold
c) had been sold
d) may be sold

17 The Eiffel Tower .... by Gustave Eiffel and its construction was completed in 1889.
a) was designed
b) was designing
c) designed
d) had designed

18 The missing painting .... recovered yet.
a) hadn't been
b) wasn't
c) isn't
d) has not been

19 The TV .... so I turned it off.
a) was watching
b) watched
c) wasn't being watched
d) didn't watch

20 After the dishes ...., they were put on the shelf.
a) washed
b) had been washed
c) have washed
d) were washing

21 The film .... by many millions of people since it was made in 1968.
a) was watched
b) has been watched
c) has watched
d) had watched



22 During the Second World War, radar .... for the first time to help planes to land.
a) was using
b) used
c) was being used
d) using

23 There are now parts of space that .... after their explorers.
a) was named
b) have been named
c) named
d) were naming

24 The first rocket .... into space in 1944.
a) was sent
b) had been sent
c) was being sent
d) was sending

25 Many spaceships .... to the moon before Apollo II in 1969.
a) have flown
b) had flown
c) had been flown
d) were flown

26 The dark side of the moon could first .... in photographs in 1959.
a) be seen
b) see
c) being seen
d) was seen

27 New bridges .... in Cairo recently.
a) have been built
b) have built
c) were building
d) were being built

28 When we arrived at the hotel, our room ....
a) had prepared
b) prepared
c) was being prepared
d) was preparing

29 The house .... before the party.
a) had decorated
b) was being decorated
c) was decorating
d) had been decorated

30 This picture .... in the nineteenth century.
a) could paint
b) was painting
c) is painted
d) was painted

31 When we went into the hotel room, the beds ....
a) were making
b) weren't made
c) have been made
d) are made

32 This funny photo on the internet is very popular. It .... to hundreds of people!
a) was sending
b) had been sent
c) has been sent
d) has sent

33. When we arrived at the theatre, the actors ....
    a) were being photographed
    b) were photographing
    c) photographed
    d) are photographed

34. This library book is very old. I think it .... by a lot of people!
    a) was being read
    b) has been read
    c) has read
    d) was reading

35. The hotel .... before the flats were built.
    a) has been opened
    b) was opening
    c) had been opened
    d) will be opened

36. Yesterday evening, the TV programme .... by nearly a million people.
    a) was watched
    b) had been watched
    c) was watching
    d) has been watched

37. By last summer, the new factory ....
    a) was being built
    b) was building
    c) has been built
    d) had been built

38. I .... to the tennis competition at the weekend.
    a) was being taken
    b) was taken
    c) had taken
    d) have been taken

39. Some trees .... down in the park today.
    a) were cutting
    b) are cutting
    c) were being cut
    d) cut

40. Why did they keep making jokes about me? I don't enjoy ....
    a) being laughed at
    b) laughing at
    c) to laugh at
    d) laugh at

41. The woman was heard ....
    a) to screaming
    b) being screaming
    c) screaming
    d) scream

42. While I was coming back home, I saw a thief .... in my neighbour's flat.
    a) break
    b) breaking
    c) to break
    d) breaks

43. They couldn't find the woman who ....
    a) was disappearing
    b) had been disappeared
    c) was disappeared
    d) disappeared

44. .... was this portrait painted?
    a) Who
    b) Who by
    c) By who
    d) By whom

Previous Exams Exercises

45 He .... by a mosquito during the night. (الأزهر ٢٠١٩)

a) has bitten b) had bitten
c) bit d) was bitten

46 This nice story .... by Taha Hussein. (السودان ٢٠١١)

a) is written b) was written
c) wrote d) writes

47 Naguib Mahfouz's books .... into many languages. (ث.ع ٢٠١٣)

a) have translated b) had translated
c) were translating d) have been translated

48 It .... that an accident took place on the Ring Road. (ث.ع ٢٠١٦)

a) has been reported b) reports
c) had reported d) reported

49 One of our classroom windows .... (الأزهر ٢٠١٨)

a) have been broken b) has broken
c) was broken d) has been broken

60 Hadeer phoned me while the food .... cooked. (الأزهر ٢٠١٢)

a) was being b) were being
c) is being d) has been

Language Functions

Talking about advantages and disadvantages — الحديث عن المميزات والعيوب

- One negative/positive side is that ....
- What are the pros and cons?
- A positive/negative side to that is ....
- What is the advantage and disadvantage of that?
- Another advantage/downside is that ....
- What is the benefit/downside of that?



Skills Exercises

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

What sort of food are we likely to be eating in the year 2030? Most people, when you ask them a question like that, either say: "There won't be any left, "or : "Whatever it is. There won't be much taste in it." Of course there are good reasons for being pessimistic about the world's food supplies in the future. Nevertheless, not all experts share the general despondency. For one thing, although the world's population is rising fast, food production is keeping pace with it, even in developing countries. It is therefore argued that the main reason why people are hungry is not that there is a food shortage but that methods of cultivation are not sufficiently advanced in some areas and the food is not fairly distributed to all those that need it. Moreover in most industrialised countries, one important cause of the trouble is our conservative preference for meat. After all, we are already in a situation where we feed animals with grain to produce high-quality beef, even though the grain would feed the human population. By the time our grandchildren have grown up, it seems likely that many of these problems will have been resolved. Scientists are already capable of constructing steaks from vegetable ingredients like soya beans. However skeptical we may be about their claim that they can reproduce the substance, taste and colour of meat by these means, the fact is that the most common complaint about such "steaks" is that we will no doubt have discovered a way of including artificial bones, skin and fat."

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What does the underlined word "despondency" mean?

a) Hope. b) Hopelessness.
c) Care. d) Wish.

2. What gives us hope despite the pessimistic view?

a) Food production is keeping pace with the growing population.
b) There is food shortage in some poor countries.
c) We throw some much food in dustbins.
d) We eat three times a day.



3. How can industrialised countries be a cause of the problem of food shortage?

a) They throw food in seas.

b) They feed animals with grain to produce high-quality beef instead of man.

c) They take all the world's food.

d) They punish the countries which grow food.

4. Who can solve the problem of our preference for meat?

a) Traders.
b) Rich countries.
c) Scientists.
d) Consumers.

B) Answer the following questions :

5. What do most people think about our food in the future? (Mention two.)
6. Give two main reasons for food shortage at the present time.
7. Give two reasons for the problem of food shortage.
8. How do you think our diet is going to be in the future? (Mention two things.)

2 Write an essay of about (180) words on the following topic:

"Which parts of the world do you think should be explored more?"

3 Translation:

A) Translate into Arabic:

1. Science fiction is a kind of fiction, dealing with imaginative concepts about science and technology. In addition, it has paved the way to much scientific development.
2. War is unavoidable because of the aggressive energy of man. Science has achieved the dreams of the aggressive man who always dreamed of control and power.
3. Civilisation, which we are proud of, is the slow achievement of workers in peacetime. It is in the peaceful atmosphere, great scientists laid the foundations of civilisation.
4. Some people think developing artificial intelligence is dangerous as human will be enslaved or eliminated. Some science fiction movies express this pessimistic thought.
5. The use of sewage water for agriculture must be banned to prevent the spread of serious diseases. However, scientists are researching for a better use of it. (الأزهر (معدلة) ٢٠١٥)
6. Growing older is a natural process that we can't avoid, however, some people keep their looks for a longer period than others. A healthy lifestyle is a good way to remain young. (ث.ع (معدلة) ٢٠١٤)





B) Translate into English:

١- إن الخيـال العلمـى طريقة جيدة للكتابة عن المسـتقبل ومن المدهش أنه تم تنفيذ العديـد من الاختراعات التى وصفها بعض كتاب قصص الخيال العلمى.

(السودان (معدلة) ٢٠١٤)

٢- المنافسة غريزة طبيعية تجعلنا نحاول أن نكون أفضل من منافسينا كما أنها أصبحت أهم وسائل التقدم فى جميع المجالات فى العالم المعاصر.

٣- على الشـباب أن يتسـلحوا بالعلم والتكنولوجيا كى يصلوا لأهدافهم فلقد أصبحا أهم سمات العصر الذى نعيش فيه وأهم ملامح المستقبل.

(الدع ٢٠١٧)

٤- المواطنة هى أن يتساوى أبناء الوطن الواحد فيما لهم من حقوق وما عليهم من واجبات بغض النظر عن دينهم وآرائهم السياسية والاجتماعية.

Enrich your Vocabulary

aggressive	عدوانى	pessimistic	متشائم
citizenship	المواطنة	precise	دقيق
concepts	مفاهيم	process	عملية
duties	واجبات	rights	حقوق
eliminate	يمحو	sewage	الصرف الصحى
imaginative	خيالى/مبدع	slave	يستعبد
instinct	غريزة	surprisingly	من المدهش



Open General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... as it may seem, I actually prefer cold weather.
   a) Mysterious b) Funny
   c) Secret d) Strange
2. The sun slowly ....over the horizon.
   a) vanished b) went away
   c) disappeared d) faded
3. The top universities aim to select the most .... students.
   a) cunning b) intelligent
   c) evil d) wise
4. I read a book about an Egyptian soldier who fought in many ....
   a) conflicts b) wars
   c) combats d) actions
5. When the boy got angry, he quickly turned .... and walked away.
   a) about b) almost
   c) nearby d) far
6. The engineers say that it will take two weeks to finish digging the .... of the new sports centre.
   a) wells b) accessories
   c) foundations d) mills
7. The company apologises for the .... in phone service.
   a) contact b) proportion
   c) division d) interruption
8. Terrorism is one of the most important issues on the .... of mass media.
   a) software b) radar
   c) application d) article
9. The young doctor referred me to the hospital .... of surgery to make a decision about my knee operation.
   a) minister b) advisor
   c) director d) consultant

10. The latest news about the virus .... trouble for the economy in many countries especially China.
   a) threatens b) applies
   c) invents d) attacks
11. My uncle .... Paris for two years now.
   a) has been to b) has gone to
   c) has been in d) has gone in
12. She .... goes to the opera. She doesn't like it.
   a) frequently b) always
   c) usually d) never
13. Don't worry. You will soon .... to wearing glasses.
   a) use to b) are used
   c) get used d) used
14. I want to go .... hot on holiday. I think I'll travel to Sharm El-Sheikh.
   a) nowhere b) somewhere
   c) anywhere d) everywhere
15. Jomana has four children but .... of them are tall.
   a) none b) neither c) both d) every
16. Turn on the lights, ...?
   a) do you b) are you c) can you d) will you
17. Would you mind .... the dog out?
   a) to letting b) to let c) letting d) let
18. That ring is gold. .... one is silver.
   a) The other b) Another c) Other d) The others
19. I was hungry, so I made .... a sandwich.
   a) me b) myself c) my d) mine
20. I'm not going to work tomorrow. .... am I. I've taken the day off.
   a) Not b) So c) None d) Neither

Test 7 Based on Unit 7

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When we arrived at the theatre, we .... to our seats immediately.
   a) had been taken b) have been taken
   c) were being taken d) were taken
2. Our washing machine isn't working properly, so we got a .... to check it.
   a) consultant b) deviser c) technician d) musician
3. The baby was .... care of by his aunt while his mother was shopping.
   a) take b) taking c) being taken d) took
4. Lots of buildings .... in the fire last night.
   a) destroyed b) have been destroyed
   c) had destroyed d) were destroyed
5. Children usually feel .... on seeing a lion in a zoo, even if it is in a cage.
   a) horrified b) pleased c) fantastic d) interesting
6. When I reached the cinema, all the tickets .... I couldn't buy one.
   a) were being sold b) have been sold
   c) had been sold d) could be sold
7. I was going to tell my mother the whole story of the film but my father .... me.
   a) explained b) admitted c) disturbed d) interrupted
8. When my father came back, dinner .... so he became angry.
   a) isn't prepared b) wasn't being prepared
   c) was preparing d) had been prepared
9. **A:** Who was *The Odyssey* .... by? **B:** It was written by Homer.
   a) written b) wrote c) writing d) did write
10. The road .... due to an oil spill.
    a) has closed b) has been closed
    c) is closing d) was being closed
11. The dog .... when it bit the gardener.
    a) was feeding b) has been fed c) is fed d) was being fed
12. The law forces all hospitals to treat any patient for free in case of ....
    a) rain b) emergency c) race d) air

Which word means to help something to develop or increase?

a) Reduce. b) Charge. c) End. d) Promote.

The person whose job is to give advice on a particular subject is called ....

a) consultant b) producer c) lecturer d) trainee

Sara .... up at 6 o'clock and then she went for a run.

a) had got b) was getting c) got d) gets

The publisher is looking for writers who .... speakers of Arabic and English.

a) they are b) are c) are they d) they were

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Dr Christina, from a medical school in Brazil, is visiting the Middleton Medical School to give a talk on new medicines. She is one of a team of doctors and pharmacists who work in the Amazon Forest. They work to find out about the methods which local people use to treat diseases. Local people use "herbal" medicines, which come from plants and the team wants to learn about these plants and study them to find the active component. Then they plan to experiment with them.

Herbal (Plant) medicines were used for treating illness very long ago, and they are still common in many parts of the world. These plant medicines are safer and cheaper than scientific medicines, and they work just as well for many diseases. Moreover, people believe that products labelled "natural" are always safe and good for them. However, many people still use scientific medicines. Dr Christina says that we are too dependent on scientific medicines, which can be dangerous and make people ill. Some diseases have become resistant to them. If the medicines stop killing bacteria and viruses, then they are more dangerous than useful. Many doctors do not recommend plant medicines but this is because they do not understand them.

Dr Christina says, "We are learning about forest plants so that we can teach city people to use them." She thinks we should use plant medicines for most of our illnesses, and keep scientific medicines for treating dangerous diseases. On the other hand, some herbs can cause serious harm. So, if you are thinking about using an herbal medicine, first get information on it from reliable sources. Make sure to tell your doctor about any herbal medicines you are taking.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Why is Dr Christina visiting the Middleton Medical School?

a) To find some new plants.
b) To give a talk on new medicines.
c) To test on herbs.
d) To meet the local people.

2. How do local people treat diseases?

a) By using herbal medicines.
b) By using chemical medicines.
c) By staying in beds.
d) By travelling abroad.

3. Why do many doctors not recommend plant medicines?

a) They do not know how useful they are.
b) They are very expensive.
c) They are dangerous to health.
d) They tried them out and knew they were not useful.

4. What is the best title to the passage?

a) Expensive medicines.
b) The Amazon Forest people.
c) Bacteria and viruses.
d) Plant and scientific medicines.

B) Answer the following questions:

5. Give two reasons why people prefer using plant medicines.
6. According to the passage, there are some disadvantages to using scientific medicines. (Mention two of them.)
7. What does Dr. Christina think about using herbal medicines?
8. What should we do if we want to use herbal medicines? (Mention two points.)

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

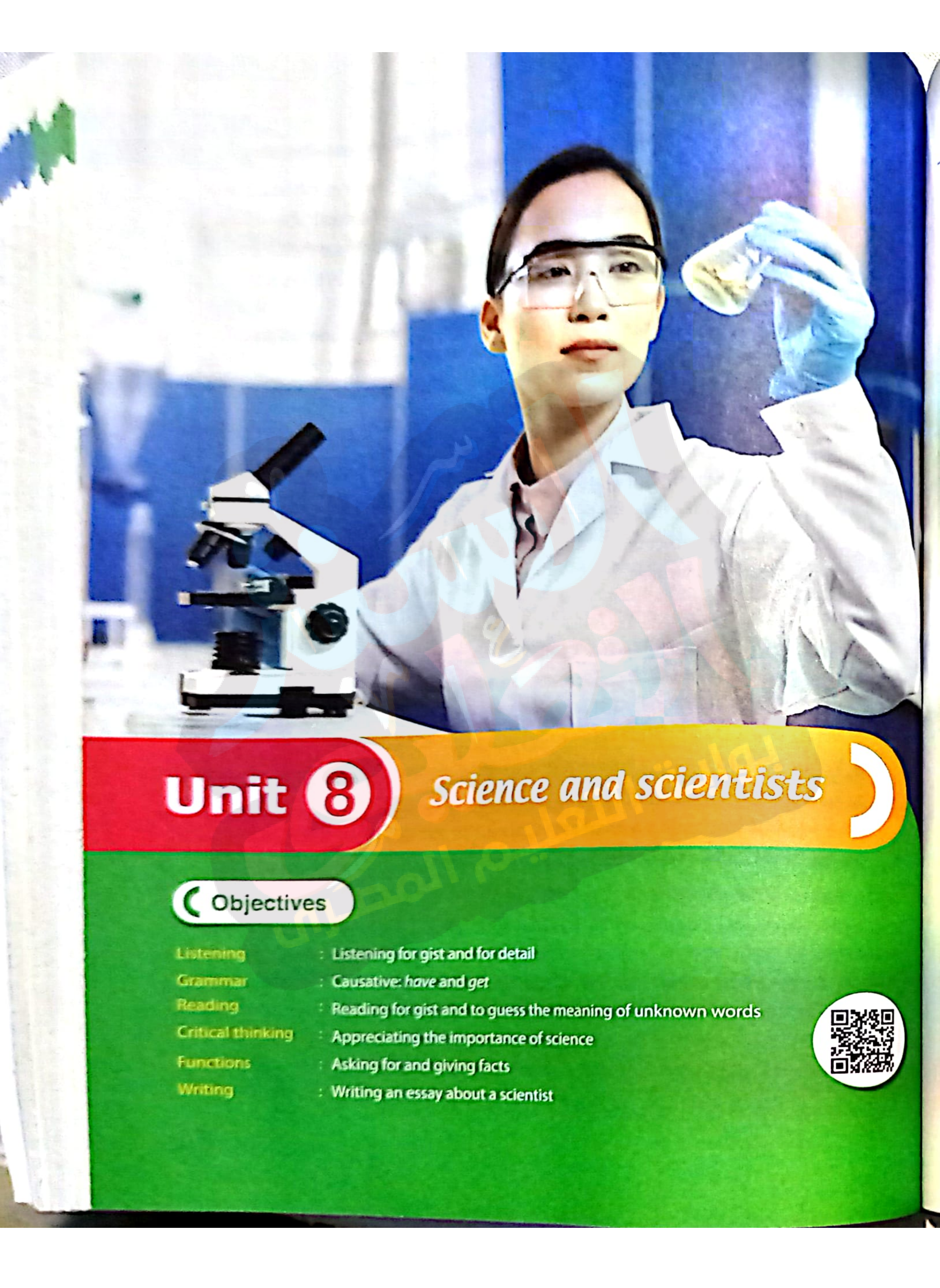
The idea of becoming a sports star appeals to millions of people, but everyone knows that only a few have the talent to achieve it.

B) Translate into English:

- على الرغم من أن قصص الخيال العلمي غير حقيقية إلا أنها قد تحتوى على أفكار قد نحتاجها فى حاضرنا أو مستقبلنا وقد تحقق من قبل ما تخيله بعض الكُتاب.

4 Write an essay of about (180) words on the following topic:

"An invention which you think had the greatest effect on our life."



Unit 8
Science and scientists
Objectives
Listening : Listening for gist and for detail
Grammar : Causative: *have* and *get*
Reading : Reading for gist and to guess the meaning of unknown words
Critical thinking : Appreciating the importance of science
Functions : Asking for and giving facts
Writing : Writing an essay about a scientist



Key Vocabulary

Word	Meaning
cancer (n)	سرطان
cause (n) (v) (d)	سبب/يسبب
gain (v) (ed)	يكتسب
illness (n)	مرض
install (v) (ed)	يركب (جهاز)
invisible (adj)	غير مرئى/خفى
link (n) (v) (ed)	رابط-صلة/يربط-يصل
mast (n)	صارى/عمود (محمول/إذاعة)
process (n) (v) (ed)	عملية/يعالج
release (v) (d) (n)	يُطلِق (فى الهواء)/إطلاق
remove (v) (d)	يزيل
signal (n) (v) (led)	إشارة/يرسل إشارة

Vocabulary on Listening

Word	Meaning
amount (n)	كمية/مقدار
certain (adj)	متأكد
complain (v) (ed)	يشكو
damage (v) (d)	يتلف/يؤذى
device (n)	جهاز
effect (n)	تأثير
experiment (n)	تجربة
form (n) (v) (ed)	شكل- نوع/يشكل- يكون
frequently (adv)	بشكل متكرر
headache (n)	صداع
powerful (adj)	قوى
probably (adv)	من المحتمل
proof (n)	إثبات/دليل
radio (adj)	لاسلكى
remote (adj)	بعيد/نائى
research (n) (v) (ed)	بحث/يجرى بحثًا
result (n)	نتيجة
safe (adj)	آمن
wave (n)	موجة
weak (adj)	ضعيف
worry (v) (y ied)	يقلق

Vocabulary on Reading

add (v) (ed)	يضيف
benefit (v) (ed)	يستفيد
check (v) (ed)	يفحص
dry (v) (y ied)	يجفف
European (adj)	أوروبى
extra (adj)	إضافى/زائد
feed (v)	يطعم/يغذى/يتغذى
increase (n) (v) (d)	زيادة/ يزداد
leaves (n)	أوراق شجر
plant (v) (ed)	يزرع
pot (n)	إناء
produce (v) (d)	ينتج
prove (v) (d)	يثبت
realise (v) (d)	يدرك
regularly (adv)	بانتظام
soil (n)	تربة
test (v) (ed)	يختبر
theory (n)	نظرية
weigh (v) (ed)	يزن
weight (n)	وزن

Critical Thinking, Communication & Workbook Vocabulary

accurate (adj)	دقيق
ancient Egyptians (n)	قدماء المصريين
capture (v) (d)	يمسك/يأسر/يحتل
cell (n)	خلية
confident (adj)	واثق
connection (n)	اتصال/ربط
correct (adj)	صحيح
diabetes (n)	مرض السكرى
disease (n)	مرض
expect (v) (ed)	يتوقع
formal (adj)	رسمى
infected (adj)	مريض/مصاب بعدوى
negative (adj)	سلبى
noisy (adj)	صاخب
normal (adj)	طبيعى
patient (adj)	صبور
pharaoh (n)	فرعون
pole (n)	عمود/قطب
polite (adj)	مؤدب
possible (adj)	ممكن
remember (v) (ed)	يتذكر
similar (adj)	مشابه



teenage (adj) مراهق	treat (v) (ed) يعالج
tolerant (adj) متسامح	visible (adj) مرئى
tour guide (n) مرشد سياحى	wet (adj) مبتل

Focus on Vocabulary

cancer (n) السرطان	a serious disease in which cells in a body grow in a way that is not normal
cause (n) سبب	a person, event or thing that makes something happen
gain (v) يكتسب	to increase in something
illness (n) مرض	a disease of the body or mind
install (v) يركب (جهاز)	to put a piece of equipment somewhere so that it is ready to be used
invisible (adj) غير مرئى	impossible to see
link (n) رابط/صلة	a connection between two or more events, people or ideas
mast (n) صارى/عمود إشارة	a tall pole
process (n) عملية	a series of events or changes that happen naturally
release (v) يطلق	to let go stop holding something
remove (v) يزيل	to take something away
signal (n) إشارة	light or sound waves that carry information to a radio, television, etc.

Expressions & Idioms

at the end of ...	في نهاية ...	gain weight	يزداد في الوزن
damage our health	يؤذى صحتنا	in particular	بشكل خاص
do (carry out) an experiment on	يجرى تجربة على	prove a theory	يبرهن على صحة نظرية
fall off his bike	يسقط من على الدراجة	test a theory with	يختبر نظرية بـ

Phrases & Prepositions

benefit from	يستفيد من	release ... into	يطلق في
cause of	سبب لـ	remove from	يزيل من
complain about	يشكو من	similar to	مشابه لـ
important for	هام لـ	worry about	يقلق عن

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
------------------		cancer	سرطان	cancerous	سرطانى
------------------		diabetes	مرض السكرى	diabetic	مصاب بالسكر
------------------		invisibility	خفاء	invisible	غير مرئى/خفى
infect	يعدى	infection	عدوى	infected infectious	مريض/مصاب بعدوى معدى
install	يركب (جهاز)	installation	تركيب (جهاز)	------------------	
process	يجرى عملية/يعالج	process processor	عملية معالج بيانات	processed	معالج/مجرى عليه عملية

prove	يثبت	proof	إثبات/دليل	proven	مثبت/مؤكد
remove	يزيل	removal	إزالة	removable	قابل للإزالة
theorise	يضع نظرية	theory	نظرية	theoretical	نظرى/غير عملى
tolerate	يتسامح	tolerance	التسامح	tolerant	متسامح
weigh	يزن	weight	وزن	overweight	ذو وزن زائد

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
cause	سبب	reason/explanation	result	نتيجة
complain	يشكو	protest	approve	يستحسن
extra	إضافى/زائد	additional	main	أساسى
frequently	بشكل متكرر	regularly	rarely	نادرًا
gain	يكتسب	acquire	lose	يخسر/يفقد
install	يركب	place	remove	يزيل
invisible	غير مرئى/خفى	unseen	visible	مرئى
link	رابط/صلة	connection	separation	انفصال
process	عملية	action	inactivity	عدم نشاط
proof	إثبات/دليل	evidence	hypothesis	افتراض
release	يُطلِق	free/drop	hold	يمسك
tolerant	متسامح	forgiving	intolerant	غير متسامح

Important Language Notes

Prefix البادئة

- البادئة هى جزء من كلمة تضاف قبل الكلمة لتعطى معنى جديدًا هناك أكثر من بادئة تعطى العكس ومنها (in – im – un) واستخدام كل منها كالتالى:

Prefix	Examples					
in	invisible	غير مرئى	intolerant	غير متسامح	informal	غير رسمى
	inaccurate	غير دقيق	inexpensive	رخيص	incredible	لا يصدق
im	impolite	غير مؤدب	impatient	غير صبور	لاحظ أنها غالبًا تستخدم مع الكلمات التى تبدأ بـ (m–p)	
	impossible	غير ممكن	impassive	غير سلبى		
	immoral	غير أخلاقى	immature	غير ناضج		
un	unintelligent	غير ذكى	uninjured	غير مصاب	لاحظ أنها غالبًا تستخدم مع الكلمات التى تبدأ بـ (in).	
	unimproved	غير متحسن	uninformed	غير مبلغ		

Other Language Notes

mast pole tower stick

mast
١- صارى (سفينة/قارب)
٢- عمود/برج (محمول - إذاعة)

- This sailing ship has a very strong and big mast to carry the sails.
- People think that it is dangerous to live near a phone mast.

pole
عمود (معدن أو خشب لتدعيم شىء)
عمود/صارى (علم)

- We set up a strong pole to support our tent.
- Every school in Egypt has a pole for our flag in the playground.

ملحوظة: يمكن استخدام (mast) أيضًا فى المعنى الأخير

tower
برج (داخل قلعة أو قصر أو معدنى لرؤية أفضل لمنظر جميل)

- Cairo Tower and Eiffel Tower are two of the most famous towers in the world.

stick
عصا أو مضرب (هوكى)

- My grandmother uses a stick to help her walk. She is old.



treat cure heal

treat يعالج شخصًا/يتعامل مع

- Patients are treated with a combination of medication معالجة and exercise.

cure يشفى/يعالج من مرض

- Many formerly سابقًا fatal diseases can now be cured.

a cure (n) علاج

- There's no cure for diabetes but the symptoms الأعراض can be managed.

heal يندمل/يلتئم (مع الحروق والقطع والجروح والإصابات)

- heal (wounds/cuts/injuries/burns)
- Vitamin K is needed by the body for healing cuts and bruises.

see - hear - watch - notice + مصدر or (v-ing)

(see - hear - watch - notice) + obj
- + inf. يعبر عن الحدث كله
- + (v-ing) يعبر عن جزء من الحدث

- I saw him play football. = I saw the whole game.
- I saw him playing football. = I saw part of the game.

signal sign

signal

١- إشارة (تليفون/إذاعة/تليفزيون)

٢- إشارة (ضوئية/صوتية) كدليل أو إعطاء إذن لشيء.

- This new TV channel sends signals via satellite to cable companies.
- We waited for them to give us the signal to move.

sign

١- لافتة (ورقية/معدنية) لمعلومة/تحذير/تعليمات

٢- إشارة إلى(حدث يدل على حقيقة)

- You can see a no-smoking sign in every hospital and many other places.
- Quick and easy crying is seen as a sign of weakness.

install fix

install

١- يركب جهازًا ويعده للتشغيل
٢- يثبت برنامجًا فى جهاز كمبيوتر

- Security cameras have been installed in the city centre.
- We've installed new anti-virus software.

fix

١- يثبت شيئًا فى شىء آخر ليبقى مدة طويلة
٢- يصلح

- The shelves should be fixed to the wall by a carpenter.
- He's outside fixing the brakes of the car.

process operation

process

١- عملية طبيعية أو صناعية لحدوث أو إنتاج شىء
٢- عملية إجرائية (سلسلة من الخطوات لإتمام شىء)

- Coal forms by a slow process of chemical change.
- Learning a language is a slow process.

operation

١- عملية جراحية
٢- عملية إنجاز (عمل/نشاط) لشركة أو منظمة

- She's going to need an operation on her knee.
- The UN rescue operation in Yemen is making progress.

earth floor ground land soil

earth الكرة الأرضية/تراب

- We believe that the earth is the only planet that has life in the solar system.

floor طابق فى بناية/أرضية الحجرة

- My sister likes wooden floors. Her office is on the second floor.

ground أرض فضاء

- The farmer fell off the high tree to the ground.

land اليابسة

- The crocodile lays its eggs on land.

soil تربة (زراعية/رملية)

- Cotton needs very fertile soil to grow well.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. From the top of Cairo ...., the city view is fantastic.
   a) Pole b) Mast
   c) Tower d) Stick
2. It can take two months for a broken leg to ....
   a) treat b) heal
   c) cure d) stop
3. My grandmother is sitting by the window watching people .... past.
   a) walked b) walks
   c) walk d) walking
4. The picture quality is bad because the TV .... isn't powerful enough.
   a) signal b) sign
   c) note d) notice
5. The plumber is coming tomorrow to .... the new washing machine.
   a) break b) smash
   c) install d) attach
6. Repetition can help the learning .... especially for primary school pupils.
   a) process b) operation
   c) option d) intention
7. There were little drops of paint on the kitchen ....
   a) earth b) land
   c) floor d) soil
8. As my grandfather is 84, he walks with the aid of a ....
   a) pole b) mast
   c) tower d) stick

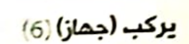


Listening Text

Narrator:

Most people love their mobile phone, but some people are worried about the effect that mobile phone signals[1] might have on our health. These signals are sent to and from our mobile phones and mobile devices all the time. Scientists think that the signals are too weak to do any damage to our health. However, mobile phones have not been around long enough for scientists to be certain of this. For that reason, parents of children with mobile phones should get their children to limit the amount of time they spend using them. They should also get them to turn off their mobile phones when they go to sleep, or to put them in a different room.

(1) إشارات
(2) عمود (برج) محمول
(3) السرطان
(4) سبب
(5) أمراض
(6) يركب (جهاز)





Although mobile phone signals are weak, the signals sent from mobile phone masts[2] are much stronger. Some people who live near mobile phone masts in particular worry about what the radio waves might do to them. These waves are very powerful and can travel for many kilometres. They can pass through buildings, so they can easily pass through our bodies too. Many people who live close to masts have complained about feeling tired, getting headaches and even getting forms of cancer[3]. But is there really a link between illnesses and radio waves?

It seems that there is no proof that radio waves make people ill. In 2014, scientists did an experiment in England. They had ten students move into a house with a mobile phone mast in the garden. They had the mobile phone mast turned on ten days after the students moved in. However, the students thought that the mast was on all the time and they told the scientists that they felt ill. The result of the experiment seems to show that the cause[4] of illnesses[5] might be worrying about the effects of phone masts, rather than the radio waves themselves.

However, to be safe, scientists believe that we should have mobile phone masts installed[6] in high or remote areas wherever possible. It's probably a good idea for people who live close to mobile phone masts to get their health checked frequently, too.

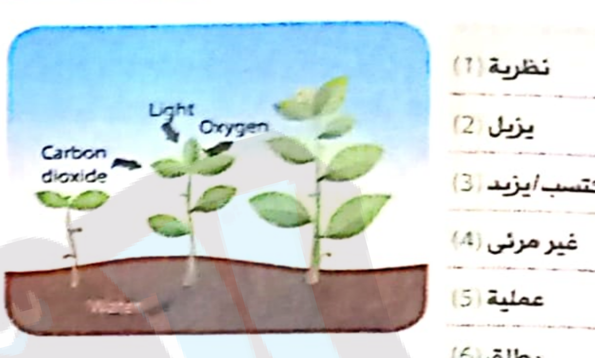
Follow this advice and you will be able to get things done on your mobile phone without worrying about your health.





Reading Text

Food from the air



نظرية (1)
يزيل (2)
يكتسب/يزيد (3)
غير مرئى (4)
عملية (5)
يطلق (6)

Everyone has seen plants growing, but have you ever thought where they get their food from? In 1652, a European scientist called Van Helmot asked this question. Before this time, it had always been thought that plants must get their food from soil. However, Van Helmot decided to test the theory[1] with experiments.

First, some soil was dried, put into a pot and weighed. After a small tree had been weighed, it was planted in a pot and rain water was added. Then, he had the tree watered regularly with rain water.

After five years, the tree was removed[2] from the pot and weighed again. Van Helmot found that the tree had gained[3] a huge amount of weight. When he got the soil weighed, however, it was almost exactly the same weight as it had been five years earlier. Van Helmot thought this was strange, but decided that the extra weight of the tree must have come from the water. He did not realise that the tree was being fed by another invisible[4] food.

We now know that plants and trees make their own food. Their leaves are like factories that produce everything they need, so that plants can change the energy from the sun into chemical energy. During this process[5], oxygen and sugar are produced. The oxygen is released[6] back into the air, and the sugar is used by the plant as food.

Notes on some sentences from (Listening & Reading) texts

1 Many people who live close to masts have complained about feeling tired, getting headaches and even getting forms of cancer.

- لاحظ استخدام (verb + ing) بعد حرف الجر (about) واستخدمت باقى الأفعال بنفس الصيغة للعطف.

2 Everyone has seen plants growing.

- بعد الفعل see, hear يأتى الفعل بـ ing ليعبر عن رؤية أو سماع جزء من الحدث إذا استخدمنا المصدر فسيعبر عن سماع أو رؤية الحدث كله.

3 It had always been thought that plants must get their food from soil but decided that the extra weight of the tree must have come from the water.

- الجملة الأولى استنتاج شبه مؤكد فى المضارع والثانية استنتاج شبه مؤكد فى الماضى.

4 Their leaves are like factories ....
.... the sugar is used by the plant as food.

- لاحظ استخدام (like) بمعنى (كـ/مثل) للتشبيه أما (as) فتستخدم بمعنى (كـ) للحقيقة وليس التشبيه.





Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Smoking is one of the most serious .... of lung diseases.
   a) results b) causes c) reasons d) consequences
2. All researches show a .... between high cholesterol and an increased risk of heart attacks.
   a) tie b) clash c) sign d) link
3. The teacher gave us the .... to finish what we were working on and hand in our tests.
   a) signal b) sign c) pole d) note
4. Last week, my grandmother died after a long .... which lasted for years.
   a) injury b) wound c) illness d) condition
5. .... is a serious illness caused by a group of cells in the body increasing in an uncontrolled way.
   a) Cancer b) Headache c) Dizziness d) Influenza
6. A lot of people worry about the health risks of mobile phone .... on buildings.
   a) sticks b) signs c) masts d) signals
7. A new hidden camera had been .... in the prison to observe the prisoners.
   a) repaired b) installed c) broken d) designed
8. Unfortunately, the poor harvest .... the prices of wheat to rise greatly.
   a) reasoned b) infected c) resulted d) caused
9. After dinner, father .... to the waiter for the bill.
   a) signed b) noticed c) signalled d) noted
10. Trees help to .... carbon dioxide from the atmosphere.
    a) fix b) remove c) clean d) service
11. As the player .... experience, he will grow in confidence.
    a) wins b) beats c) earns d) gains
12. Hundreds of balloons were .... at the ceremony.
    a) captured b) hunted c) released d) launched
13. Our boss is .... of people who have different opinions from her.
    a) inaccurate b) indebted c) intolerant d) informal
14. The driver of the car died, but the passengers were ....
    a) uninjured b) unaccepted c) uninfected d) unintelligent
15. Father believes that a manager shouldn't be too friendly and .... with his employees. He should be serious.
    a) formal b) inaccurate c) unintelligent d) informal
16. Our research isn't complete, so these results may be ....
    a) unintelligent b) inaccurate c) unimproved d) impatient



17. The student who got low grades was not ...., but he was lazy.
a) impolite b) impossible c) unintelligent d) impatient

18. The .... of the experiment surprised everyone.
a) result b) reason c) opinion d) importance

19. Scientists often do experiments to prove a particular ....
a) victory b) look c) theory d) conflict

20. People who have .... must be very careful about what they eat.
a) headache b) diabetes c) sneezing d) insomnia

21. A huge .... of water came down the river and flooded the city.
a) bucket b) glass c) amount d) number

22. Many types of cancer can now be .... due to the efforts of great scientists and doctors.
a) cured b) cared c) carved d) diseased

23. Many scientists have carried out extensive .... into the effects of drugs.
a) exam b) research c) search d) check

24. More food supplies are needed to .... the starving population.
a) feed b) eat c) bake d) freed

25. There has been a significant .... in the number of young people who smoke.
a) amount b) increase c) excess d) addition

26. When my brother travelled abroad, I .... how much I miss him.
a) informed b) educated c) recognised d) realised

27. She scraped away some .... and grasped أمسكت بـ the top of the root.
a) soil b) water c) oil d) air

28. This task is designed to .... your reading skills.
a) testify b) test c) taste d) know

29. Mothers always .... that she never had any time for herself.
a) continues b) completes c) complains d) tells

30. Scientists believe that air conditioning .... the environment.
a) damages b) saves c) injures d) resolves

31. There are many shops which sell new electronic .... in Al Boustan Mall.
a) devices b) wires c) axes d) drives

32. I think most animal .... are cruel and unnecessary.
a) experiences b) experiments c) exams d) examples

33. You can get the medicine in the .... of a syrup or as a tablet.
a) form b) photo c) picture d) shape

34. The newspaper claimed it had .... that the suspects are not criminals.
a) signal b) notice c) proof d) title

35. Mr. Omar is the only expert in .... communications in our company.
a) private b) common c) wire d) radio

36 She had never imagined being able to visit such .... villages.
a) nearly b) remote c) nearby d) near

37 If you .... more sugar to a cup of coffee, the coffee will taste sweeter.
a) add b) take c) extract d) make

38 After you press the two parts together, let the glue .... for at least an hour.
a) wet b) soak c) dry d) dive

39 The hotel receptionist says that guests can use the gym at no .... cost.
a) less b) device c) pay d) extra

40 I didn't really.................. Said to come to the party as he has important exams.
a) expect b) accept c) except d) respect

41 The patients who are .... with the virus should be separated from other ones.
a) infected b) injured c) uninjured d) wounded

42 You can tell they are identical twins. Even their likes and dislikes are ....
a) ambitious b) similar c) worthwhile d) mature

43 A healthy person's red .... count is between 4.5 to 6 million per millilitre.
a) call b) sample c) cell d) analysis

44 Most coffee shops offer free internet .... to attract more customers.
a) contact b) attach c) tie d) connection

45 It is quite .... for children to be afraid of the dark.
a) strange b) normal c) foreign d) unexpected

46 Teen Stuff is a/an .... magazine which basically concentrates on young men and women between 13 and 19 years old.
a) children b) mature c) extra d) teenage

47 It was difficult to .... patients because of a shortage of medicine.
a) treat b) heal c) behave d) feed

48 It's difficult to make airports completely .... from terrorist attacks.
a) safe b) dangerous c) weak d) risky

49 Radio Shack sells TVs, VCRs, and other electronic ....
a) developers b) designs c) tools d) devices

50 The army .... over 400 enemy soldiers during the 6th October War.
a) chases b) captured c) hunted d) accesses

Expressions, idioms, prepositions, derivatives, synonyms and antonyms *Exercises*

51 The area has now been removed .... the list of dangerous destinations.
a) of b) in c) from d) at

52 The word "separation" is an antonym to the word "..................".
a) approval b) link c) shortage d) supply



3. The examination showed that .... cells had grown around the liver.
   a) constant b) cancerous c) theoretical d) cancer
4. .... is something that scientists dream of but haven't achieved.
   a) Invisible b) Visibility c) Visible d) Invisibility
5. Can you .... that you were at home at the time of the attack?
   a) remove b) approve c) proof d) prove
6. The noun "evidence" is a synonym to the noun "..................".
   a) decision b) refusal c) climax d) proof
7. My uncle is very wealthy, so he never has to worry .... money.
   a) for b) about c) with d) in
8. Scientists test their theories by .... experiments.
   a) getting b) having c) making d) doing
9. She has been .... since she was a child.
   a) diabetes b) sugary c) diabetic d) honey
10. The .... of a security system has become a necessity for all companies nowadays.
    a) install b) installed c) installment d) installation
11. With the telescope we can see details of the planet's surface that are ....
    a) invisible b) visible c) visibility d) invisibility
12. Learning a foreign language can be a long .... that may take years.
    a) processed b) process c) processing d) processional
13. The adverb "rarely" can be the opposite to the adverb "..................".
    a) frequently b) gradually c) scarcely d) approximately
14. At night, some stars are clearly .... to the naked eye.
    a) visibility b) invisible c) visible d) invisibility
15. When I was young, I kept falling .... my bike until I learned to ride well.
    a) into b) off c) out d) of
16. The first year in the Faculty of Science provides students with a good .... basis for later study.
    a) theory b) theoretical c) theorise d) theoretically
17. The word "protest" is similar in meaning to ....
    a) accept b) approve c) complain d) please

Previous Exams *Exercises*

18. Don't start yet. Wait until I give the .... (الأزهر ٢٠١٩)
    a) signal b) sign c) gesture d) symbol
19. People wonder if there is a .... between illnesses and radioactive waves. (ث.ع ٢٠١٩)
    a) link b) contact c) communicating d) connecting
20. A lot of people oppose putting telephone .... on the roofs of buildings. (ث.ع ٢٠١٩)
    a) poles b) masks c) sails d) masts


Grammar

Causative (Active and passive) السببية

1 The active causative (have and get)

have + object (عاقل) + infinitive / get + object (عاقل) + to + infinitive

- The teacher had us do some extra work today.
- Please get Yasser to help you.

A) have + object (عاقل) + infinitive

- It is used to express that someone causes someone else to do something.

- تستخدم للتعبير أن شخصًا يجعل أو يتسبب أو يطلب من شخص آخر أن يفعل شيئًا.

- The boss had the secretary type the letter. (He asked her to type the letter).

B) get + object (عاقل) + to + infinitive

- It is used to show that someone persuades someone else to do something.

- تستخدم للتعبير أن شخصًا يقنع شخصًا آخر أن يفعل شيئًا.

- He got his mother to bake him a cake. (He persuaded her to bake him a cake.)

2 The passive causative (have and get)

have / get + object (غير عاقل) + P.P.

- I don't cut my hair. I have my hair cut.
- Do you usually get your room cleaned? No, I clean it myself.

We use have + object + past participle to say that we have arranged for someone to do something for us.

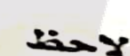
نستخدم هذا الشكل لنقول إننا رتبنا لشخص أن يفعل شيئًا لنا.

- Osama had a house built. (He didn't do it himself - the builder did it.)

- **This is similar in meaning to the passive:**

- تشبه السببية المجهول وتستخدم فى كل الأزمنة ويمكن أن نذكر الفاعل بعد by أو لا نذكره.

	Passive		Tense	Causative		
My car	is repaired	(by the mechanic)	مضارع بسيط	have	my car	repaired (by the mechanic).
	was repaired		ماضٍ بسيط	had		
	is being repaired		مضارع مستمر	am having		
	was being repaired		ماضٍ مستمر	was having		
	has been repaired		مضارع تام	have had		
	had been repaired		ماضٍ تام	had had		
	will be repaired		مستقبل	will have		
	can be repaired		مصدر الفعل	can have		
	must be repaired		مصدر الفعل	must have		

- السببية فى السؤال (نستخدم do/does للمضارع البسيط وdid للماضى البسيط).
- السببية فى النفى (نستخدم don't/doesn't للمضارع البسيط و didn't للماضى البسيط).

• Did you have your meal prepared?
• No, I didn't (have it prepared). I prepared it myself.

- وفى الأزمنة الأخرى نستخدم الفعل المساعد أو الناقص الموجود فى أول السؤال.

• Are you going to have your tooth pulled out by the dentist?
• Have you had your car checked at the garage?
• Will you have your house painted?







Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We always .... our clothes washed every Friday.
   a) had b) get c) are having d) will have
2. He had the gardener .... the flowers.
   a) water b) watering c) to water d) watered
3. Ali is getting his car ....
   a) to repair b) repair c) repaired d) repairing
4. I'm having my homework .... by the teacher.
   a) to check b) check c) checking d) checked
5. He .... the assistant to deliver him some groceries.
   a) got b) had c) made d) has

Extra Points

1. يمكن استخدام الفعل make بدلًا من have فى المعلوم بمعنى الإصرار وليس الطلب.

- The teacher made us write the homework twice. (He insisted that we should.....)

2. يمكننا استخدام السببية بدلًا من المبنى للمجهول للتعبير عن الحوادث أو المصائب.

- We had our car stolen. = Our car was stolen.
- She had her leg broken. = Her leg was broken.

3. تستخدم get بدلًا من have ليفيد الصعوبة أحيانًا.

- He finally got the seats booked.

4. يمكن القول إن have تأتى على شكل الفعل الذى يكون فى المعلوم فلو كان الفعل به ing فإننا نستخدم having وإن كان الفعل مصدرًا نستخدم have وإن كان الفعل .to + inf فإننا نستخدم to have مثل:

- She likes cleaning her house.
- She likes having her house cleaned.
- She'd like (likes) to clean her house.
- She'd like (likes) to have her house cleaned.



Grammar Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 When I was young, I used to have all my clothes .... by my mother.
a) iron b) ironing c) to iron d) ironed

2 I .... a plumber to fix the dripping tap yesterday.
a) am having b) got c) had d) made

3 We usually have a chef .... our food.
a) cook b) to cooking c) to cook d) cooked

4 I have got a technician .... my washing machine recently.
a) checked b) to check c) check d) checking

5 My glasses are broken. I'm going to have a new pair .... this evening.
a) to make b) will make c) made d) make

6 They .... their house cleaned since last week.
a) haven't had b) had c) were having d) didn't have

7 We had a maid .... our house last Tuesday. It doesn't need doing today.
a) to cleaning b) clean c) cleaned d) to clean

8 My car is making a strange noise. I should have it .... at by the mechanic.
a) look b) to look c) looked d) looking

9 Mohamed's house is very hot. He needs to get a technician .... an air conditioner.
a) to install b) install c) installed d) installing

10 Fathy's car is really dirty. He ought to .... it cleaned at the garage.
a) cause b) have c) make d) let

11 My sister was .... her hair combed when she fell asleep.
a) got b) letting c) having d) making

12 He is driving the car again. Has he had it ....?
a) repaired b) repair c) to repair d) will repair

13 After I had .... the fence built, no one broke into my garden.
a) caused b) let c) made d) got

14 We are going to have our new furniture .... tomorrow.
a) to deliver b) deliver c) delivered d) delivering

15 I had my house .... last week and it looks wonderful.
a) decorate b) to decorate c) decorated d) decorating

16 My father always has me .... my bed after getting up.
a) to make b) made c) make d) making

17. Will you go with me to the hospital? I'm .... my leg operated on tomorrow.
 a) got b) having c) had d) making
18. She had her husband .... the shopping this morning.
 a) doing b) done c) to do d) do
19. We had had the lock .... before we travelled to Matrouh.
 a) fixed b) to fix c) fix d) was fixed
20. When are you going to get someone .... the carpets?
 a) cleaning b) cleaned c) to clean d) clean
21. His computer is really slow. He should have it .... It might have a virus.
 a) check b) to check c) checked d) checking
22. The elderly man is .... his heart examined at the moment.
 a) having b) making c) letting d) got
23. They have had the servant .... the dishes for two hours.
 a) will wash b) washed c) wash d) to wash
24. Galal will .... his novel published at the end of this month.
 a) cause b) let c) make d) have
25. She got her son .... the shopping to the house.
 a) carry b) carried c) to carry d) carrying
26. Parents should .... their children to limit the amount of time they spend using mobile phones.
 a) have b) make c) get d) let
27. Parents should get their children .... off their mobile phones when they go to sleep.
 a) to turn b) turn c) turned d) turning
28. I .... Ali to go to the sports club with me, although he didn't want to go.
 a) let b) got c) had d) made
29. Mother had Shaimaa .... her room before she went out.
 a) tidy b) to tidy c) tidying d) tidied
30. Before the meeting, the manager always gets the reports ....
 a) type b) to type c) typing d) typed
31. Dina .... the flat cleaned every week.
 a) had b) is having c) has d) does
32. I .... my hair cut yesterday.
 a) should have b) get c) have d) didn't have
33. My brother always has his clothes ....
 a) to clean b) cleaned c) clean d) cleaning



34 I had my car .... before I left the garage last week.
a) checked b) to check c) check d) checking

35 The PE teacher had us .... around the playground four times.
a) running b) to run c) run d) ran

36 If you don't know how to use the computer, get your older brother .... you.
a) to help b) help c) helped d) helping

37 How often do you get your teeth .... at the dentist's?
a) check b) checked c) to check d) checking

38 We're eating in a restaurant tonight because my parents are having the kitchen ....
a) to painting b) to paint c) paint d) painted

39 Walid .... his eyes tested last week, and now he needs to wear glasses.
a) made b) has c) got d) let

40 My mother usually gets me .... my bedroom at the weekend.
a) tidy b) tidied c) have tidied d) to tidy

41 Hamdi's homework was not very good so the teacher .... him do it again.
a) had b) got c) have d) is having

42 The manager .... a technician to install a new computer program.
a) had b) made c) got d) lets

43 Ali is going to the stadium this afternoon. Let's get him .... some tickets for next week's match.
a) buy b) to buy c) bought d) buying

44 My parents have the garden .... at the weekend.
a) been watered b) to water c) water d) watered

45 Tarek .... his photos printed after he takes them.
a) gets b) got c) had d) makes

46 When my cousins were in England, my uncle .... some money sent to them.
a) is having b) has c) had d) gets

47 The teacher didn't check your homework. You .... it checked last week.
a) should have b) should have had c) could have d) must have

48 My TV was broken but I .... it repaired before the weekend.
a) had had b) was having c) should have had d) will have

49 Do you have your car .... done regularly?
a) been serviced b) being serviced c) serviced d) service

- I .... my mobile phone repaired last week.
  a) should have b) used to have c) didn't get d) never have
- She always looks forward to .... her house cleaned by a servant.
  a) have b) get c) making d) having

Previous Exams *Exercises*

- Adel .... He made it himself. (ش ع ٢٠١٩)
  a) has his dinner cooked b) has his dinner been cooked
  c) cooks his dinner d) cooked his dinner
- The boss got the employees .... till late at night. (ش ع ٢٠١٩ دور ثان)
  a) to work b) be working c) work d) worked
- Wait there and I'll .... someone to help you with those bags. (السودان ٢٠١٩)
  a) have b) get c) let d) make
- I got my hair .... before the wedding. (الأزهر ٢٠١٩)
  a) cut b) cuts c) cutting d) to cut

Language Functions

Asking for and giving facts السؤال عن واعطاء الحقائق

Asking for facts	Giving facts
• I've heard that the ancient Egyptians had illnesses that were similar to ours today. Is that correct/true?	• It is possible that ....
• Could/Can you tell us something about what was eaten at this time?	• It is a well-known fact that ....
• And is it true/right that they did not eat much meat?	• We can be confident that ....
• Is it possible/Do you mean that only rich people ate meat?	• We can't be sure of this, but ....
• And do we know/can we tell if the ancient Egyptians had doctors?	• What is certain is that ....

Skills Exercises

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Man's life has been subject to a lot of change during the last hundred years particularly in what is connected to his consuming habits. Sixty years ago, before the start of the consumer societies of today's world, people did not throw away so many of the things they used. They used and re-used bottles, jars, cardboard boxes, paper bags, etc. much more carefully than we do today. Now, more than fifty years later, we are returning to the same good idea which we now call "recycling".

We are again thinking about what we throw out. Why do we throw away so much food packaging, so many plastic supermarket bags, old newspapers, old books, bottles and cans? What is all this rubbish doing to our environment, to the world we live in ? Can't we use some of it again? The answer is : Yes, we can. New industries – recycling industries are starting to re-use some of our rubbish. For example, the island of Taiwan now buys tonnes of waste paper from the USA and recycles it to make newspapers, and for use in offices and homes. Japan takes scrap metal from the USA and makes some parts of new cars with it. Most European and American cities now have "recycling centres" for people's old bottles and newspapers.

All this recycling is not only good for the environment but it is good business, too. For instance, a recycled aluminium container is 20% cheaper to make than a new one. For both the environment and the economy, recycling makes very good sense.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. In what way can we describe our grandparents?

a) They were less careful than we are today.
b) They were more wasteful than we are today.
c) They were less wise than we are today.
d) They were more economic than we are today.

2. How can we call our society nowadays?

a) We are still a consuming society.
b) We are still a productive society.
c) We are still an advanced society.
d) We are still a civilised society.



3. In what way should we follow in other countries?

a) Playing new games.

b) Starting new recycling centres.

c) Spending much money on food.

d) Making wars everywhere.

4. What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to?

a) Car industry. b) Paper Industry.

c) Scrap metal. d) Spare part.

B) Answer the following questions:

5. For what is recycling useful (good)? (Mention two.)

6. What are the things that can be used and reused? (Mention four of them.)

7. Mention two industries that make use of rubbish.

8. How do you think we can make the best use of recycling?

2 Write an email of about (180) words on the following topic:

"A film that you saw about the story of a famous scientist that you liked a lot."
Your name is Mohamed and your friend is Islam.

3 Translation:

A) Translate into Arabic:

1. There have been a number of famous scientists whose discoveries have helped in making the world a better place. Some of these are Arabs or Egyptians.
2. Many scientists have dedicated their entire life in search of their inventions and discoveries. These should be honoured at the highest level.
3. Zewail City of Science and Technology is designed to participate in 21st century science. It is supposed to provide Egypt with brilliant scholars and scientists.
4. Some scientists believe that there is no need to worry about the waves of mobile phones. The harms they can cause are not scientifically proven, yet.
5. The process of photosynthesis is important for our life as it helps us get rid of carbon dioxide. Therefore, we should care much for planting more trees.
6. A wise man is rarely appreciated in his own time. He is like a mountain, the top of which cannot be seen by people and its foot, but only by those at a distance.



B) Translate into English:

١- للعلـم أثر كبير فى تطور المجتمعات البشـرية لذا يجب على الحكومة إعطاء اهتمـام كبير للعلم والعلماء كما يجب توفير كل الإمكانيات اللازمة للبحث العلمى.

٢- بفضل التكنولوجيا الحديثة تم اكتشاف علاج جديد لأمراض لم يمكن علاجها من قبل مما أدى إلى ارتفاع متوسط أعمار الناس خاصة فى الدول المتقدمة.

٣- أصبحت المشاريع الصغيرة من أهم الوسائل للقضاء على مشكلة البطالة حيث تدفع الشباب للنجاح والمشاركة فى النمو الاقتصادى بعيـدًا عن الوظيفة الحكومية.

٤- الشـباب هـم العمود الفقرى لأى تقدم فبعملهم الجاد تقوم المشـروعات الضخمة و تنجـح الخطط لذا تولى الدولة لهم اهتمامًا كبيـرًا بعقد الدورات والمؤتمرات التى تعمل على تطوير مهاراتهم.

Enrich your Vocabulary

backbone	العمود الفقرى	get rid of	يتخلص من
carbon dioxide	ثانى أكسيد الكربون	human societies	المجتمعات البشرية
dedicate	يكرس	photosynthesis	البناء الضوئى
entire life	الحياة كلها	youth	الشباب



Open General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The chest pain الم الصدر is a warning .... that cannot be ignored by any patient.
   a) signal b) evidence
   c) hint d) mark
2. Some companies demand .... fees for the delivery of their goods.
   a) spare b) added
   c) over d) extra
3. The new airport has a modern air traffic control ....
   a) mast b) tower
   c) pole d) castle
4. Mona said she had a/an .... experience during her journey last year.
   a) alike b) close
   c) like d) similar
5. Samy was happy that he could pass her driving ....
   a) test b) quiz
   c) exam d) final
6. We arrived at the meeting early and .... ourselves in the front row.
   a) repaired b) installed
   c) fixed d) fitted
7. If you click on this ...., it takes you to our flight timetable.
   a) connection b) contact
   c) link d) way
8. Firefighters took two hours to .... the driver from the burning vehicle.
   a) launch b) quiz
   c) release d) hold
9. Targeted advertising on social media is very successful as a marketing ....
   a) device b) equipment
   c) machine d) design
10. The number of people claiming unemployment .... fell last month.
    a) pay b) fare
    c) tax d) benefit



11 ...., we heard a loud noise.

a) Sudden
b) A sudden
c) More suddenly
d) Suddenly

12 Yasser .... a dog and two parrots and he always keeps them in the garden.

a) was having
b) has
c) have
d) is having

13 Hossam .... for a new bike these days.

a) looks
b) has looked
c) is looking
d) looking

14 I went to the doctor's .... I felt ill.

a) because
b) so that
c) so
d) although

15 He .... about school and homework.

a) complains always
b) always is complaining
c) is complaining always
d) is always complaining

16 Samy .... of moving to Alexandria next year.

a) thinks
b) is thinking
c) thinking
d) had thought

17 The children played ....

a) happily all afternoon in the garden
b) in the garden happily all afternoon
c) happily in the garden all afternoon
d) all afternoon in the garden happily

18 For .... information about the course, please ask the secretary.

a) further
b) furthest
c) farther
d) farthest

19 He .... to leave on Tuesday but then he decided to leave on Friday.

a) has gone
b) went
c) is going
d) was going

20 He .... be Noha's son. He looks just like her!

a) can't
b) must
c) is able to
d) shouldn't

Test 8 Based on Unit 8

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I hardly recognised you! You have .... your hair dyed.
   a) caused b) made c) get d) had
2. She is going to the hairdresser's to have her hair .... later today.
   a) be cut b) to cutting c) cut d) cuts
3. A lot of people are angry about building mobile phone .... near their homes.
   a) sticks b) signs c) masts d) signals
4. When he reached the hotel, he had his luggage .... to his room by the porter.
   a) to take b) taken c) take d) been taken
5. Somaia's eyes are sore so she is going to get them ....
   a) be tested b) testing c) test d) tested
6. Ahmed .... weight after his accident because he stayed in bed for a month.
   a) gained b) earned c) missed d) caught
7. We had someone .... our new flat last year and it still looks like new.
   a) painted b) to paint c) paint d) painting
8. People who have .... mustn't eat many sweets.
   a) insomnia b) diabetes c) dermatitis d) cancer
9. The grass in my garden is too long. I should get a gardener .... it.
   a) to cutting b) cutting c) cut d) to cut
10. We .... that the doctor was too impatient to talk to him.
    a) continued b) completed c) complained d) told
11. My tooth hurts. I .... it looked at by a dentist.
    a) need to have b) had c) needed to have d) was having
12. A virus is .... to the eye and can only be seen with a powerful microscope.
    a) invisible b) visible c) valuable d) availablle
13. You .... your eyes tested. I'm Soha not Noha.
    a) were having b) had c) should have d) have
14. The antonym of the word "install" is ....
    a) connect b) remove c) fix d) fit
15. You .... play with matches; it's very dangerous.
    a) didn't need to b) needn't c) mustn't d) don't have to
16. Tamer was .... a taxi when her mobile phone rang.
    a) to b) onto c) on d) in

then answer the questions:

People smoke for a variety of reasons: because they are shy, nervous or don't feel at ease in society, to appear sophisticated and older, to be part of a group. The truth is that smoking doesn't solve these problems; it only masks and adds to them as 15-year-old Ramy found out too late:

"I can remember very clearly the day I started smoking. I was 12 and my parents had let me go to a wedding party with my friend Kareem. I was extremely shy. However, Kareem was quite different. He looked about 16 and acted in a very sophisticated way. After we had been at the party for about half an hour, Kareem came over to me with Sameh and Tark from the year above us at school. We talked for a while. Then Sameh suggested we went outside for some fresh air. Sameh took a pack of cigarettes and lit one. The same happened with Tark and Kareem. I was shocked because I knew that Kareem had never smoked before. Sameh asked me if I wanted a cigarette and I said: "No, I don't smoke." The boys started laughing saying that only kids didn't smoke. I was so embarrassed that it was hard to say "no".

I thought smoking was a sign of being grown-up and that anyone who didn't smoke was a baby. I'm ashamed to admit I pressured many of my friends to begin smoking exactly as I had been influenced to do it.

Now, three years later, I smoke about 20 cigarettes a day and I stink of smoke. I have a bad cough and I'd love to stop, not only because I know I'm harming myself, but also because it is costing me a fortune. To tell the truth, I don't even like smoking. I hate it but I simply can't stop".

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What does this sentence mean "it only masks and adds to them"?

a) Smoking enables people to solve their problems.

b) Smoking does nothing to people's health.

c) Smoking makes the matter worse.

d) Smoking brings happiness to most people.

2. Why was Ramy shocked at the party?

a) To be forced to smoke.

b) To leave the party to have fresh air.

c) To have such bad company.

d) To see Kareem smoking.

3. **Why do you think Ramy can't stop smoking?**

a) As it is useful to him.
b) As it is poisonous.
c) It has become a habit.
d) It is cheap to buy.

4. **What influence did Ramy have on other people regarding smoking?**

a) He made them buy him cigarettes.
b) He made them cough.
c) He made them give up smoking.
d) He made them start smoking.

B) Answer the following questions:

5. What are the reasons of smoking? (Mention two of them.)
6. Give two reasons why Ramy started smoking.
7. What reasons did Ramy find to go on smoking? (Mention two of them.)
8. How did smoking affect Ramy's life? (Give two points.)

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

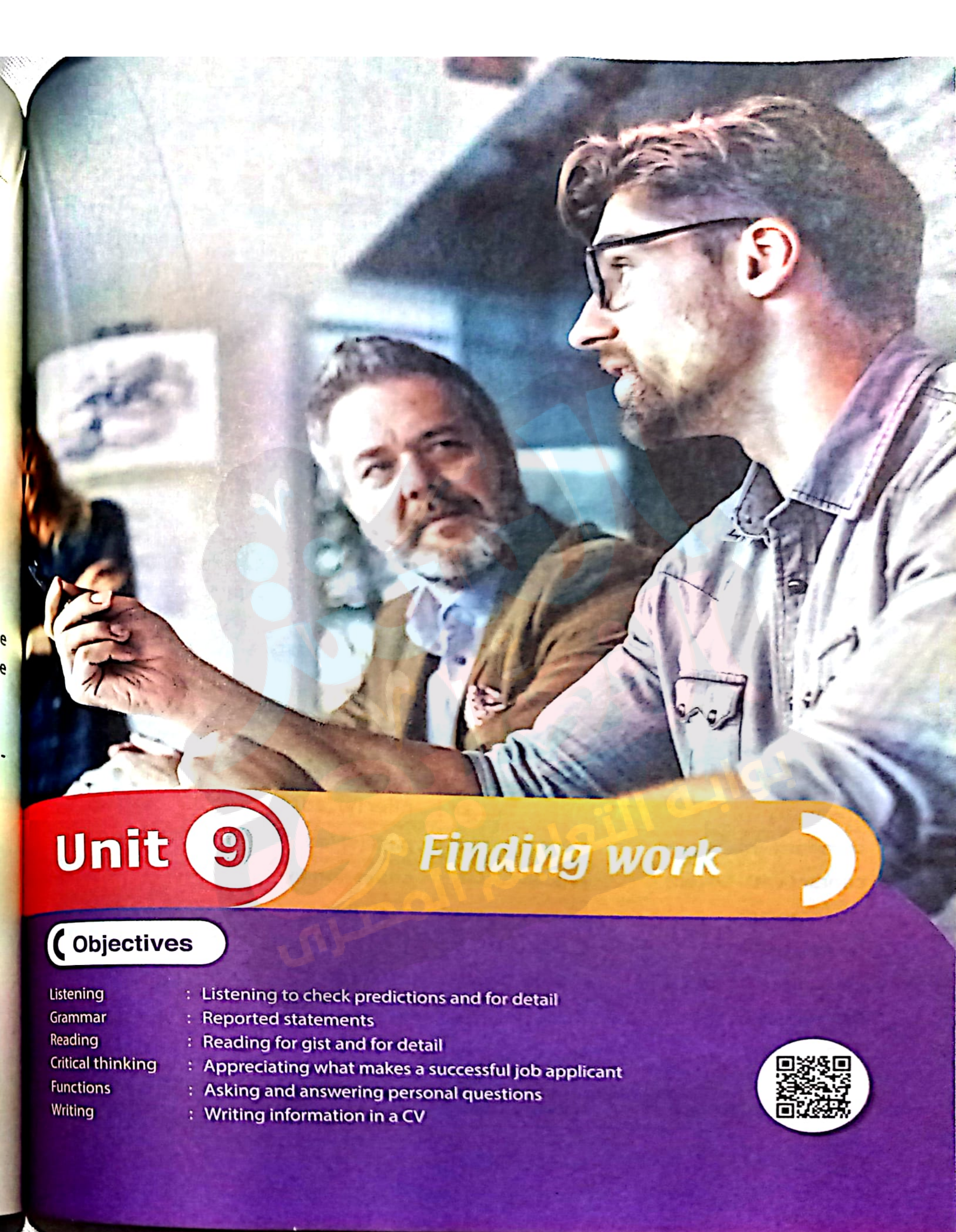
All successful people agree that there is no success without hard work and the only place success comes before work is in the dictionary. You must also be able to accept failure.

B) Translate into English:

- لا يمكن تحقيق الإنجازات والمشاريع الاقتصادية الضخمة إلا فى مناخ مملوء بالسلام والأمن ففى وقت الحرب تدمر المنشآت وتشرد العائلات وينهار الاقتصاد ويسيطر الخوف على الجميع.

4 Write an essay of about (180) words on the following topic:

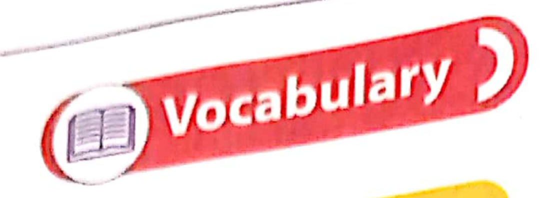
"A famous scientist whose achievements had a great effect on the world."



Unit 9 Finding work

Objectives

Listening	: Listening to check predictions and for detail
Grammar	: Reported statements
Reading	: Reading for gist and for detail
Critical thinking	: Appreciating what makes a successful job applicant
Functions	: Asking and answering personal questions
Writing	: Writing information in a CV



Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

applicant (n)	متقدم لوظيفة
appointment (n)	موعد
candidate (n)	مرشح
choir (n)	الكورال (مجموعة مغنين)
conscientious (adj)	ذو ضمير حى/مُجد
CV (Curriculum Vitae)	السيرة الذاتية
daycare centre	مركز رعاية نهارى
established (adj)	ثابت/ذو مكانة
fluent (adj)	طليق/فصيح اللسان
grade (n)	درجة/تقدير
neighbourhood (n)	الجيرة/الحى
pharmacy (n)	صيدلية
product (n)	منتَج
reputation (n)	سمعة/شهرة
sales (n)	مبيعات
sociable (adj)	اجتماعى(شخص)

Vocabulary on Listening

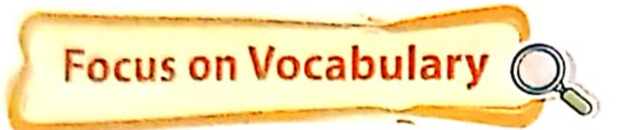
accept (v) (ed)	يقبل
ambitious (adj)	طَموح
biology (n)	علم الأحياء
chemistry (n)	الكيمياء
company (n)	شركة
contact with (v) (ed)	يتصل بـ/يتواصل مع
customer (n)	زبون/عميل
degree (n)	درجة (جامعية/علمية)
encourage (v) (d)	يشجع
experience (n)	خبرة
formally (adv)	رسميًا/بشكل رسمى
gain (v) (ed)	يكتسب
interview (n) (v) (ed)	مقابلة/يُجرى مقابلة
licence (n)	رخصة
list (n)	قائمة
medical (adj)	طبى
offer (v) (ed)	يعرض/يقدم عرضًا
pass (v) (ed)	يمر/ينجح فى/يجتاز
profession (n)	مهنة
qualities (n)	صفات/خصائص
reply (v) (y-ied)	يرد/يجيب
result (n)	نتيجة
sales assistant	بائع
well organised (adj)	منظَم جيدًا
wonder (v) (ed)	يتساءل

Vocabulary on Reading

academic (adj)	أكاديمى
achievement (n)	إنجاز
activities (n)	أنشطة
ambition (n)	طُموح
assistant editor	مساعد رئيس تحرير
athletics (n)	ألعاب القوى
award (n) (v) (ed)	جائزة-وسام/يمنح
camp (n) (v) (ed)	معسكر/يعسكر
computing (n)	دراسة الكمبيوتر
interests (n)	اهتمامات
member (n)	عضو/فرد
nationality (n)	جنسية
skill (n)	مهارة
the Far East (n)	الشرق الأقصى

Critical Thinking, Communication & Workbook Vocabulary

abbreviation (n)	اختصار
agent (n)	وكيل/ موظف
amazing (adj)	مذهل
attend (v) (ed)	يحضر
care (v) (d)	يهتم
career (n)	حياة مهنية
charity (n)	جمعية خيرية/ عمل خيرى
competition (n)	منافسة
customer service (n)	خدمة العملاء
details (n)	تفاصيل
disabled (adj)	معاق
employer (n)	صاحب العمل
get on (v)	ينسجم
information technology (n)	تكنولوجيا المعلومات
leader (n)	قائد
missing (adj)	مفقود/ مفتقد
particular (adj)	خاص
personal (adj)	شخصى
personnel (n)	هيئة العاملين
physical (adj)	مادى/بدنى
qualifications (n)	مؤهلات
representative (n)	مندوب
smoking (n)	التدخين
specialise (v) (d)	يتخصص
voluntary (adj)	تطوعى
volunteering (n)	تطوع



Focus on Vocabulary

Word	Definition
applicant (n) متقدم لوظيفة	someone who has formally asked for a job, a place at a college, etc. especially by writing a letter
appointment (n) موعد	a meeting that has been arranged for a particular time and place
CV (Curriculum Vitae) السيرة الذاتية	a document that describes your education and the jobs that you have done, used when you are trying to get a new job
candidate (n) مرشح	someone who tries to get a particular job
choir (n) الكورال (مجموعة مغنين)	a group of people who sing together
conscientious (adj) ذو ضمير حى/مُجد	showing a lot of care and attention
daycare centre مركز رعاية نهارى	a place where people who are old or ill can be looked after during the day
established (adj) ثابت/ذو مكانة	describing a company, organisation, etc. that has been in existence for a long time
fluent (adj) طليق/فصيح اللسان	able to speak or write a language very well without stopping or making mistakes
grade (n) درجة/تقدير	a number or letter that shows how well you have done in your exam or school work
neighbourhood (n) الجيرة/الحى	a small area of a town or the people who live there



pharmacy (n) صيدلية	a store or a part of a store where medicines are prepared and sold
product (n) منتج	something that is made or grown in order to be sold
reputation (n) سمعة/شهرة	the opinion that people have of a person, product, company, etc.
sales (n) مبيعات	the part of a company that deals with selling products
sociable (adj) اجتماعى (شخص)	friendly, liking to be with other people

Expressions & Idioms

at the present time	فى الوقت الحالى	have a degree in	لديه شهادة فى
do a course in	يدرس مقررًا فى	have a driving licence	يحمل رخصة قيادة
do the accounts	يقوم (يتولى) الحسابات	make an appointment	يرتب موعدًا
gain experience	يكتسب خبرة	on time	فى الوقت المحدد

Phrases & Prepositions

apply for	يتقدم بطلب لـ	fluent in	طليق فى
award for	جائزة على	focus on	يركز على
candidate for	مرشح لـ	result of	نتيجة لـ
care about/for	يهتم بـ	work as	يعمل كـ

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
------------------------------		conscience	ضمير	conscientious	ذو ضمير حى/ مُجد
------------------------------		neighbourhood neighbour	الجيرة/ الحى جار	neighbourly neighbouring	حسن الجوار/ ودى مجاور
------------------------------		fluency	طلاقة/ فصاحة	fluent	طليق/ فصيح
------------------------------		skill	مهارة	skilled/ skilful	بارع/ ماهر
achieve	ينجز/ يتم	achievement	إنجاز	achievable	يمكن تحقيقه
specialise	يتخصص	specialisation specialist	اختصاص/تخصص أخصائى	specialised	متخصص

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
choir	الكورال	chorus	soloist	مؤدى منفرد
conscientious	ذو ضمير حى/ مُجد	honest	unconscientious	غير مجتهد
fluent	طليق/ فصيح	eloquent	hesitant influent	متردد غير فصيح
reputation	سمعة / شهرة	fame	unimportance	عدم أهمية
sociable	اجتماعى (شخص)	neighbourly	unsociable	انطوائى
ambitious	طموح	aspiring	content	راضٍ/قنوع
academic	أكاديمى	scholastic	ignorant	جاهل
member	عضو/ فرد	representative	opponent	خصم
skill	مهارة	proficiency	incompetence	عدم كفاءة

Important Language Notes


Word families


- بعض الكلمات تشتق من كلمات أخرى باستخدام اللاحقة (suffix) التى تحول الفعل إلى اسم أو صفة مثل التالى:

Verb	Noun	Adjective
....	account حساب accountant محاسب	accountable يمكن حسابه
apply يتقدم بطلب	applicant متقدم لوظيفة application طلب وظيفة	....
consult يستشير	consultant مستشار	consultative استشارى
assist يساعد	assistant مساعد	....
....	reputation سمعة	reputable محترم لعمله الجيد
....	profession مهنة	professional مهنى/احترافى
appoint يحدد وقتا	appointment موعد	....
....	conscience ضمير	conscientious ذو ضمير حى
qualify يؤهل	qualification مؤهل	qualified مؤهل
decide يقرر	decision قرار	decisive حاسم
possess يمتلك	possession ملكية	possessive تملكى/خاص بالملكية
achieve يحقق/ينجز	achievement إنجاز	achievable يمكن إنجازه
permit يسمح	permission إذن/تصريح	permitted مسموح



Abbreviations

- هناك بعض الاختصارات المتفق عليها فى عالم الوظائف والأعمال مثل:

B.Sc.	Bachelor of Science	بكالوريوس فى العلوم
BA	Bachelor of Arts	بكالوريوس أو ليسانس آداب (درجة جامعية)
CV	Curriculum Vitae	السيرة الذاتية
DOB	date of birth	تاريخ الميلاد
F/T	full time	كامل الوقت
GSEC	General Secondary Education Certificate	شهادة الثانوية العامة
IT	information technology	تكنولوجيا المعلومات
M.Sc.	Master of Science	درجة الماجستير فى العلوم
P/T	part-time	بعض الوقت/جزء من الوقت
PhD	Doctor of Philosophy	درجة الدكتوراه فى الفلسفة

Other Language Notes

interview appointment conference meeting

interview مقابلة شخصية (لوظيفة)/مقابلة (إذاعية/تليفزيونية/صحفية)

- I've got an interview for a job as an interpreter.

interviewer المُحاوِر (الشخص الذى يُجرِى المقابلة)

interviewee المُحاوَر (الشخص الذى تُجرَى معه المقابلة)

appointment موعد/ميعاد (ترتيب لرؤية شخص فى وقت معين)

- I have an appointment to see my lawyer next Saturday.

conference مؤتمر

- The president arrived for a conference with local officials.

meeting اجتماع

- They organised meetings on a number of important political issues.

applicant candidate

applicant متقدم (بطلب) للحصول على شيء (وظيفة/جنسية/تأشيرة)

- Ten women were selected from over 30 applicants.

candidate مرشح (فى الانتخابات/الوظيفة) - متقدم لامتحان ما

- One candidate must receive the majority of the vote.

apply (for/in/to)

apply (for) — يتقدم بطلب (للحصول على وظيفة/تأشيرة/جنسية/مكان فى الجامعة، .... إلخ)
- We advertised three jobs, and over 50 people applied.
- How many jobs had you applied for before you were offered this one?

apply in person — يتقدم بالطلب شخصيًا
- You should apply immediately, in person or by letter.

apply to + inf. — يتقدم بطلب لكى ...
- Hesham is applying to join the armed forces.

apply to + noun — يتقدم بطلب إلى
- You have to apply to the passport office for a visa.

apply — ينفذ/يستعمل/يُطبق
- Apply the cream in the morning and the evening.

apply to + noun — ينطبق على
- Do the same rules apply to part-time workers?

on time / in time

on time — فى الوقت المحدد
- The train was on time.

in time — فى الوقت المناسب
- I want to be home in time for tea.

degree / certificate

degree
١ - درجة (زاوية/حرارة/مستوى)
٢ - شهادة جامعية
- It was very cold yesterday. It was about 10 degrees.
- All the students have different degrees of ability.
- Applicants must have a degree in engineering.

certificate
١ - وثيقة/شهادة (ميلاد/خبرة/ضمان)
٢ - وثيقة/شهادة (دراسية كالثانوية)
- In order to get a passport, you'll need your birth certificate.
- Students who complete the program receive a skill certificate.
- I got the General Secondary Education Certificate in 2005.



grade	rank	
grade		تقدير شهادة/امتحان صف دراسي
▸ He got a grade A in his university degree. ▸ My brother is in sixth grade.		
rank ▸ My brother was promoted to the rank of captain. ▸ This hotel was used only by people of high rank.		رُتبة (عسكرية/اجتماعية)

Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You don't need to have any university .... for many vocational jobs.
   a) qualify b) qualified
   c) qualifications d) qualifying
2. It leaves a very bad impression if you're late for a job ....
   a) interview b) appointment
   c) seminar d) conference
3. Around 20% of the .... in the elections are women.
   a) applicants b) candidates c) writers d) viewers
4. My brother suggested applying .... a bank loan to buy a car.
   a) in b) at c) about d) for
5. According to his death ...., my uncle died aged 44.
   a) degree b) qualification c) certificate d) licence
6. My parents were in the same .... at school.
   a) grade b) rank c) degree d) course
7. Nour studied mathematics at university, but now he's working in the .... department.
   a) CV b) IT c) PT d) BA
8. Why don't you .... your parents about starting this project?
   a) consult b) consultant
   c) consultative d) consultatively



Listening Text

Interviewer : Good morning, Mr Farag. Please sit down.

Mr Farag : Thank you.

Interviewer : First of all, thank you for sending us your CV. I see you have a degree in biology and chemistry from Alexandria University.

Mr Farag : That's right.

Interviewer : And you're twenty-five years old. Do you have a driving licence?

Mr Farag : Yes, I do. I passed my driving test last year.

Interviewer : What have you been doing since you left university?

Mr Farag : I've been working as a sales assistant in my uncle's pharmacy[1].

Interviewer : I see, so you have some sales[2] experience. I wonder if you could tell me why you're leaving your uncle's company?

Mr Farag : Yes, of course. I should start by saying that I have gained a lot of useful experience working for my uncle, but I'm quite ambitious and I'd like to travel round in my job and visit other places.

Interviewer : Good. Does your uncle know you're trying to find another job?

Mr Farag : Yes, he does. He's encouraging me to look for jobs.

Interviewer : Good. And why do you want to work for us?

Mr Farag : My uncle's told me that yours is an established[3] company with a very good reputation[4] in the medical profession.

Interviewer : That's right.

Mr Farag : My uncle has sold your products[5] for many years and has never had any problems with them.

Interviewer : And why do you think you'd be good at the job?

Mr Farag : Well, I've always been a conscientious[6] worker and I'm a sociable[7] person, so I'll enjoy meeting and talking to customers. I'm also well organised, so I'd always make sure I arrived on time for appointments[8].

Interviewer : Now at the moment, you're living with your parents in Nasr City. How would you feel if we asked you to work in another part of the country?

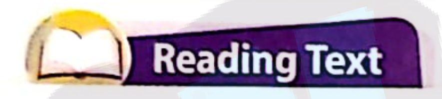
(1) صيدلية
(2) مبيعات
(3) ذو مكانة عالية
(4) سمعة
(5) منتجات
(6) مجد / ذو ضمير حي
(7) اجتماعى
(8) مواعيد

Mr Farag : That'd be no problem. If I were given the job, it wouldn't matter to me where I was living and working.

Interviewer : Fine. Thank you very much for your time, Mr Farag. We have your telephone number and email address. We aren't interviewing any more people today. I'll contact you on Saturday morning to let you know the result of this interview.

Mr Farag : Thank you very much. Goodbye.

Interviewer : Goodbye.



Reading Text

Ahmed Fawzy

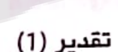
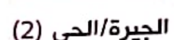
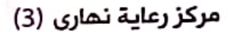
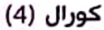


Home address
El Tonsy St., Bahary, Alexandria, Egypt
Contact information
Phone : 102 03 48004
Email : ahmed.fawzy@me.edu
DOB : 17/05/1999
Nationality : Egyptian

EDUCATION
2015- 2018 English Secondary School, Alexandria General Secondary Education Certificate (GSEC) Thanawiya amma 2018 96%
2018-present English language, Cairo University

WORK EXPERIENCE
2016-2018 Editor of school magazine

ACHIEVEMENTS AND AWARDS
Academic
2018 - Special award for highest grade[1] in English language
Sports : University Football Club - Captain of first team
Other activities: Charity work in home neighbourhood[2] - in daycare centre[3] for older people (two afternoons); camping; member of school book club and school choir[4].


(1) تقدير

(2) الجيرة/الحى

(3) مركز رعاية نهارى

(4) كورال



طليق/فصيح (5)

SKILLS

IT : Computing Grade 5

Experience in using Microsoft Office (Word and Excel)

Languages : Fluent[5] in English

A little spoken Spanish and French

INTERESTS

Sports : Football, squash, athletics

Travel : I enjoy meeting people from other countries.

I have travelled to Europe and Australia.

My ambition is to visit the Far East (China and Japan).

Notes on some sentences from (Listening & Reading) texts

1 I see you have a degree in biology and chemistry from Alexandria University.

- كلمة biology و chemistry بدون the على الرغم من وجود «الـ» التعريف لأنهما مواد دراسية.

- كلمة جامعة يمكن أن تأتى قبل الإسكندرية وتكون كالآتى the University of Alexandria وهكذا مع معظم المضاف والمضاف إليه مثل the problem of pollution و the standard of living.

2 I passed my test last year. = I succeeded in my test last year.

- كلمة passed بدون حروف جر بعدها وتساوى succeed in.

3 I'd always make sure I arrived on time for appointments.

- لاحظ أن 'd اختصار would و on time تعنى فى الوقت المحدد بالضبط أما in time فتعنى فى الوقت المناسب.

4 Charity work in home neighbourhood – in daycare centre for older people (two afternoons).

- كلمة daycare بمعنى الرعاية نهارًا لكبار السن فى دار المسنين وهذه من الأعمال الخيرية فى البيئة المجاورة.

5 Fluent in English - A little spoken Spanish and French

- نص القراءة فى هذه الوحدة من نوع خاص إذ إن طلب الوظيفة تكون الجمل فيه مجرد توصيل للمعنى وليست جملًا كاملة والمثال السابق دليل إذ إنك لا تجد فاعلًا أو فعلًا ولكن قد فهمنا المعنى وهو أن الشخص المتقدم للوظيفة طليق فى اللغة الإنجليزية ويتكلم الفرنسية والإسبانية قليلًا.



Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My brother is a/an .... child who'll talk to anyone, even strangers.
   a) ambitious b) selfish c) sociable d) social
2. The starting salary of the successful .... will be determined according to experience.
   a) applicants b) employers c) lawyers d) managers
3. Nahdet Misr is an .... company in the field of publishing in Egypt.
   a) ambiguous b) individual c) established d) absolute
4. There should be a .... in every shopping centre in the new city for patients to buy medicine.
   a) laundry b) station c) bakery d) pharmacy
5. The bank's experience has given it a good .... with their customers.
   a) repetition b) reputation c) intention d) intonation
6. My grandfather had always been a very .... worker. He received many awards.
   a) conscientious b) lazy c) disorganised d) recognised
7. You should send a full .... with your job application.
   a) IT b) CV c) BA d) DOB
8. You should .... for the job of a receptionist in person as there will be a primary interview.
   a) apply b) reply c) comply d) imply
9. A team of doctors .... the famous heart surgeon with the operations.
   a) invite b) acquire c) assist d) intend
10. The reason I .... good results is because I work hard – and so could you.
    a) achieve b) ignore c) lose d) miss
11. He is the best .... for the job because he has many years of experience.
    a) employer b) candidate c) voter d) interviewer
12. The priest joined a church .... at the age of eight and was always there on Sundays.
    a) team b) lab c) group d) choir
13. As Mr. Sameer spent a few years in China, he is .... in Chinese.
    a) fluent b) free c) affluent d) good
14. The daycare .... provides activities for people with learning disabilities.
    a) shop b) centre c) store d) lab

15 There were various parks around our ...., but many of them were turned into blocks of flats.
a) atmosphere b) neighbourhood c) globe d) world

16 Recent advances in .... have led to important changes in the work of offices.
a) IT b) CV c) MA d) BA

17 The .... complained about the loud music of the birthday party at Mr. Eslam's house.
a) enemies b) neighbours c) opponents d) rivals

18 You should phone his secretary if you want to make a/an .... with the manager.
a) committee b) ceremony c) appointment d) session

19 My uncle was always .... He always looked for a better job.
a) selfish b) jealous c) envious d) ambitious

20 You are the most .... person I know. You never forget anything and you are never late.
a) well-organised b) well-behaved c) well-established d) well-dressed

21 Getting into university would be my greatest ....
a) fear b) ambition c) ambiguity d) prediction

22 Nowadays, most jobs require language and computer ....
a) skulls b) skills c) tools d) terms

23 Applicants for this job must have a .... in engineering.
a) degree b) rank c) mark d) sign

24 The new coach of our team doesn't give .... to the press.
a) interviews b) lectures c) meetings d) conferences

25 This test measures children's .... in reading, spelling and maths.
a) width b) achievements c) length d) height

26 I'd recommend this book to anyone who has a/an .... in English.
a) interest b) courage c) nerve d) ambition

27 Karim is the most .... player in our team. He plays so well.
a) fearful b) dreadful c) shameful d) skilful

28 Everyone in the office was expected to .... the meeting.
a) go b) agree c) attend d) depend

29 He possessed no .... qualifications. So he didn't get the job.
a) academic b) magic c) historic d) political

30 The twentieth century has witnessed incredible .... advances.
a) medicine b) medical c) curable d) treated

31 Our trip guide said that we'd .... by the river for the night, and move the next morning.
a) attach b) attack c) fight d) camp

32 One of the most important things to have as a secretary is .... skills.
a) literary b) computing c) electrical d) electronic

33 My friend recommends me to be a .... of Resala Organisation if I want to work for a charity.
a) member b) number c) person d) servant

34 My uncle spent most of his .... working in the United States.
a) work b) job c) childhood d) career

35 The .... manager is checking Walid's papers as he was chosen for the job.
a) personnel b) personal c) personality d) personification

36 My friend Ahmed is a doctor who .... in children's medicine.
a) releases b) considers c) specialises d) results

37 Mariam does a lot of .... work in a lot of charities in Egypt.
a) economical b) voluntary c) profitable d) introductory

38 It is common to use .... in application forms such as DOB and BA.
a) forms b) titles c) addresses d) abbreviations

39 My son works with a support group for .... people who were hurt in accidents.
a) natural b) healthy c) disabled d) strange

40 .... can lead to lung cancer and other diseases.
a) Burning b) Smoking c) Robbery d) Energy

41 .... is the scientific study of living things.
a) Chemistry b) Biology c) Physics d) Geography

42 More women are participating in .... competitions in the Olympics nowadays.
a) reading b) quiz c) scientific d) athletics

43 Mr. Adel .... all his students to do the best that they can do.
a) argues b) effects c) encourages d) impresses

44 Some job losses were the .... of the decrease in production and cheap imports.
a) result b) reason c) opinion d) importance

45 The oil company has a/an .... in Sydney who deals with the Australian side of the business.
a) agent b) headquarter c) exit d) well

46 I phoned the airline's customer .... and they said seats were available.
a) project b) capital c) branch d) service

Expressions, idioms, prepositions, derivatives, synonyms and antonyms

47 I help my father .... the accounts for his shop after school.
a) do b) make c) develop d) evolve

48 She hopes to .... experience by working abroad for a year.
a) gain b) win c) earn d) lose

49 The adjective "enthusiastic" is similar in meaning to the word ....
a) lazy b) ambitious c) untrusted d) strange

50 I don't think the new manager cares .... his staff at all.
a) at b) about c) of d) at

51 .... in English and French is required for this job.
a) Fluency b) Fluent c) Fluently d) Frequency

52 As Ashraf was not a hard worker, it took him seven years to.................... in law.
a) qualify b) qualified c) qualification d) disqualify

53 The word "incompetence" is an antonym to the word "....................".
a) skill b) ambition c) conscience d) application

54 We get .... with all our neighbours. Everyone is so friendly.
a) in b) to c) about d) on

55 I decided to .... a course in Italian to be able to travel to Italy for a job.
a) provide b) do c) run d) give

56 Unfortunately, neither of the two students could .... a credit card because they don't have a bank account.
a) possess b) possessive c) possession d) possessively

57 My sister has applied .... a job with the local newspaper.
a) in b) for c) at d) about

58 The United Nations asserts the importance of good .... relations between countries.
a) neighbour b) neighbourly c) neighbouring d) neighbourhood

59 The word "fame" is a synonym to the word "....................".
a) capability b) acceptance c) reputation d) ignorance

60 Choosing a college is a big .... for students and their families.
a) decide b) decided c) decision d) decisive

61 Mobile phones are not .... in the examination room.
a) permit b) permission c) permitted d) permissive

62 The six carefully .... stages of the course take students elementary to advanced level.

a) grade b) graded c) grading d) degrade

63 The film review focuses .... the main characters and incidents.

a) at b) about c) on d) at

64 The adjective "hesitant" can be the opposite to the adjective ".................... ."

a) impatient b) affective c) effective d) fluent

65 The book is written by a famous .... in the field of chemistry.

a) specialise b) specialty c) specialist d) specialisation

Previous Exams *Exercises*

66 My cousin made a .... decision when he decided to give an hour a week to charity.

a) continuous b) conventional c) conscientious d) confidential

(ث.ع ٢٠١٢)

67 Companies ask .... to enclose their CVs with their forms. (ث.ع ٢٠١٧)

a) employers b) managers c) applicants d) interviewers

68 I worked hard all day round, but I had failed to .... my goal. (ث.ع ٢٠١٨)

a) find b) follow c) score d) achieve

69 To be a successful computer programmer, you should have certain .... (ث.ع ٢٠١٧)

a) stitch b) skull c) sketch d) skill

70 If you want to see a doctor, you will need to make a/an .... (السودان ٢٠١٩)

a) application b) department c) appointment d) employment

71 He has always been a .... worker. We trust him. (الأزهر ٢٠١٩)

a) careless b) conscientious c) sociable d) negligent

72 There are over 10 .... for the job. (ث.ع ٢٠١٩)

a) appointments b) interviews c) applicants d) professions

73 She .... for a job at the new project. (ث.ع ٢٠١٩)

a) employed b) wanted c) worked d) applied

74 Don't worry about your money, the bank has a good .... (ث.ع ٢٠١٩)

a) presentation b) reputation c) repetition d) application

75 All .... teachers should enjoy respect and appreciation throughout their career.

a) irresponsible b) casual c) sloppy d) conscientious

(ث.ع ٢٠١٩)



Reported Speech الكلام المنقول (الغير مباشر)

- الكلام غير المباشـر هو نقل كلام شـخص فى وقت غير وقت الكلام ومكان غير المكان وهذا يستلزم تغيير الأزمنة والضمائر والظروف الزمنية وظروف المكان.

Omar said, "I am ill today." (Direct)

Omar said that he was ill that day. (Indirect)

- عندمـا قال عمر هذا الكلام كان فى يوم سـابق غير وقت نقل الكلام عنـه فلزم تغيير الزمن من «أكون» إلى «كان» وظرف الزمان من «اليوم» إلى «ذلك اليوم».

Reported statements الجمل الخبرية

١- يكـون فعـل القول فى الجملة الخبرية said أو told؛ بعد said لا نعـرف المتحدث إليه ولكن بعد told نعرف المتحدث إليه فى يأتى بعد told المفعول به سواء اسم أم ضمير مفعول مثل me/him/her/us/them.

٢- لا توضع علامات تنصيص فى الجملة المحولة إلى غير المباشر ويتم ربط الجملة الخبرية بـ that ويمكن حذفها.

٣- بعد that دائمًا جملة كاملة بدايتها الفاعل (اسم أو ضمير) والضمائر تكون موافقة لسياق الجملة.

٤- إذا كان فعل القول (said/told) ماضيـًا فلا يوجد مضارع أو مستقبل بعدهما إلا فى الحالات الخاصة التى سيأتى ذكرها الآن لأن الكلام قد تغير زمنه فننزل بالزمن درجة للوراء كالآتى:

Direct	Indirect (Reported)
write/writes	wrote
wrote	had written
is/are writing	was/were writing
has/have written	had written
has/have been writing	had been writing
was/were writing	had been writing
will/shall write	would write
shall write	should write (asking for advice)
may write	might write
can write	could write

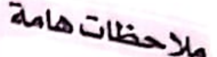


Direct	Indirect (Reported)
must write	had to/must write (laws)
will have to write	would have to write

- ظروف الزمان والمكان وضمائر الإشارة تكون موافقة للكلام المنقول أيضا وهي كالتالي:

Direct	Indirect (Reported)
now	then
this	that
these	those
here	there
today	that day
tonight	that night
this afternoon	that afternoon
tomorrow	the next day
tomorrow morning	the next morning
next week	the following week
next Friday	the following Friday
yesterday	the day before/the previous day
last week	the week before/the previous week
(two days) ago	(two days) before/earlier

- Leila said, "I like tennis and I played a good game this morning."
- Leila said that she liked tennis and she had played a good game that morning.

ملاحظات هامة

❶ لا يتغير الزمن فى الجملة المحولة فى الحالات الآتية:

(أ) الحقائق (facts)

. The teacher told us that the Nile is the longest river in the world.

(ب) إذا كان الكلام مَقُولاً حالاً أى به كلمات مثل (just now/a moment ago).

. My father said just now that he is going to Alexandria tomorrow.

(ج) إذا كان فعل القول فى أحد أزمنة المضارع أو المستقبل.

. Ahmed says/has said that he is ready for the exam.

(د) الماضى التام والماضي من modal verbs و had better/used to يبقى كما هو.

. He said that they could see the mountain after they had reached the top of the tower.

❷ يمكن استخدام الأفعال الآتية بدلًا من said:

agreed / أكد asserted / أوضح indicated / ذَكَرَ mentioned / complained / ادعى claimed / صاح shout / explained / أبلغ/نقل الخبر reported

. The man said, "The woman was killed yesterday."

. The man reported that the woman had been killed the day before.

❸ يمكن استخدام الأفعال الآتية ويأتى بعدها (v+ing):

suggest/admit/deny/apologise for/objected to/insisted on + (v-ing)

. He said, "Let's look for another flat."

. He suggested looking for another flat.

بعد deny/admit يمكن تحويل الجملة باستخدام that وبعدها جملة:

. He said, "I didn't steal the bag."

. He denied stealing the bag.

. He denied that he had stolen the bag. (الفعل بعد deny مثبت)

❹ يمكن استخدام الأفعال الآتية ويأتى بعدها .to + inf:

promise/offer/agree/threaten/refuse/remind/decide/warn/ask/advise/allow + (to + inf.)

. He said, "I'll help you with your homework."

. He promised to help me with my homework.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The tourist said that he .... there as there were sharks.
   a) couldn't bathe b) can't bathe c) had to bathe d) might bathe
2. She said she was going out but she .... home in two hours.
   a) can be b) would be c) will be d) is going to be
3. He agreed that it .... a good result for the team to win 3/1.
   a) was b) to be c) is d) has been
4. He told me that I .... better take someone with me, as it was safer with two.
   a) would b) had had c) had d) had been
5. He .... his mother that he would do the washing up the following day.
   a) agreed b) promised c) said d) suggested

Extra Points

❶ لا يتحول الزمن بعد فعل القول الماضى إذا كان الكلام قد قيل فى وقت سابق من نفس اليوم أو الشهر أو السنة.

▸ Ola said that her father is leaving tomorrow. (حول الكلام قبل مغادرة الأب)

- Ola said that her father was leaving the next day. (حول الكلام بعد مغادرة الأب)

❷ الماضى المستمر يمكن أن يحول إلى ماض تام مستمر أو يظل كما هو للحفاظ على وحدة الزمن.

▸ He said that he had been studying all day the day before.

- He said that he fell down while he was playing.

❸ هناك أفعال يجب استخدام that بعدها مثل remark/ exclaim/complained/ inform/explained

▸ He complained that the service in that restaurant was not good.

والأفعال الآتية فى حالة عدم وجود (to + inf) أو (v-ing).

(agree / deny / promise / claim / threaten / remind / boast / suggest / claim)

▸ He said, "Yes, I'll help you with your homework."

- He agreed to help me with my homework.

- He agreed that he would help me with my homework.

❹ يمكن تغيير الزمن أو لا إذا كان المتكلم يعتقد أن الشىء حقيقى.

▸ He said she likes/liked strawberries very much.



أما إذا كان الشىء غير حقيقى فلابد من تغيير الزمن.

He said that China was a poor country.

يمكن تغيير الماضى البسيط إلى ماض تام أو يبقى ماضياً بسيطًا كما هو إذا كان فعل القول ماضياً.

She said she was/had been early for the meeting.

تحول الحالة الأولى من if إلى الحالة الثانية ولكن الماضى غير الحقيقى فى الحالة الثانية والثالثة والتمنى لا يحول.

"If you ask Ali, he'll help you." Omar said. (1st conditional)

Omar said (that) if I asked Ali, he would help me.

"If my children were older, I'd immigrate." Samy said to me. (2nd conditional)

Samy told me (that) if his children were older, he would immigrate."

إذا كان هناك جملتان تربطان بـ and that/and added that.

He said that he had got his passport and that he would travel the following week.

تحول this التى تشير للزمن إلى that.

He said that day was the hottest day of the year.

تحول this/that/these/those إلى the إذا لم تستخدم للزمن وكانت أسماء إشارة.

"This animal is cute," said Hadeer.

Hadeer said that the animal was cute.

وتحول this/these إلى it/they/them إذا كانتا ضمائر محل الفاعل أو المفعول.

He said, "This is a mistake."

He said that it was a mistake.

هناك مجموعة مصطلحات تأتى مع say و tell ولكن فى الجمل التى ليس لها علاقة بالمباشر.

Say	Tell
say good morning/evening, etc.,	tell the truth, tell a lie, tell a joke
say something/nothing, etc.,	tell (someone) the time,
say a few words, say so,	tell someone one's name, tell a story,
say no more, say a prayer,	tell a secret, tell someone the way,
say for certain, etc.	tell the difference, etc.



Grammar Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My daughter .... her teacher had given her a reward that day.
   a) agreed b) told c) said d) complained
2. Maher said that he .... a friend at the station later that day.
   a) is meeting b) was meeting c) meets d) had met
3. Sara told me that she .... a job interview the previous day.
   a) had b) will have c) had had d) has
4. She said that China .... a densely populated country.
   a) would be b) will be c) had been d) is
5. Fares told us that his family .... a house in the countryside two months before.
   a) bought b) had bought c) would buy d) has bought
6. He told me that he .... me to repair my car the following day.
   a) helped b) had helped c) would help d) will help
7. The article says that there .... an increase in the number of university students next year.
   a) will be b) had been c) was d) would be
8. She told him that he could ask her advice if he .... any problems.
   a) will have b) had had c) was having d) had
9. He told her he had seen the film she .... the night before.
   a) recommended b) had recommended
   c) would recommend d) has recommended
10. She said that she .... to visit Cairo the following week.
    a) was wanting b) would want c) wanted d) will want
11. The science teacher said that when you freeze water, you .... ice.
    a) will get b) would get c) can get d) get
12. The policeman told us that we .... the rules and respect the law.
    a) must follow b) followed c) had followed d) were following
13. Samy and Salah said that they .... a party the following week.
    a) will have b) have c) had d) would have



14 Our teacher told us that his family and he .... to Australia the following year.
a) will move b) might move c) moved d) had moved

15 The teacher told the students that the Earth .... around the sun.
a) is revolving b) revolved c) revolves d) had revolved

16 They said that they .... the mountain after they had reached the top of the tower.
a) will see b) have seen c) were seeing d) could see

17 Manal told her friend that her brother .... her with her homework.
a) helps b) can help c) was helping d) will help

18 Tarek explained that they were hot because they .... tennis for 2 hours.
a) would play b) had been playing
c) are playing d) have been playing

19 Mona warned us that the animal .... dangerous.
a) should be b) will be c) must be d) was

20 Karim admitted that he had lost the pen that I .... him.
a) had lent b) would lend c) was lending d) have lent

21 Nahla said that it .... great if they could go to England in the summer.
a) would be b) had been c) was d) can be

22 She complained that she .... for more than an hour for her appointment.
a) would wait b) had waited c) could wait d) should wait

23 They promised that they .... us as soon as they arrived.
a) phone b) had phoned c) would phone d) will phone

24 He admitted that he .... a mistake the night before.
a) could make b) would make c) has made d) had made

25 She explained that she .... to visit me the following week.
a) had hoped b) could hope c) hopes d) was hoping

26 He agreed that he .... anyone what I had said.
a) won't tell b) hadn't told c) would not tell d) didn't tell

27 He said that he .... to the museum and seen a lot of tourists.
a) went b) had been c) have been d) was going

28 Nadia said that she .... a test the following week.
a) took b) takes c) will take d) was taking

29 Ola admitted that she .... really know the vocabulary that we needed to know.
a) doesn't b) hadn't c) didn't d) wouldn't

30 Toka said that her teacher was right and that she .... revising that evening.
a) had started b) would start c) started d) will start

31 Nahla promised that she .... me to revise if I wanted.
a) will help b) had helped c) helps d) would help

32 She said she .... me until she'd finished.
a) wouldn't see b) can't see c) will see d) had seen

33 He explained that London .... the capital of Britain.
a) would be b) is c) had been d) has been

34 Mr Tamer said he .... his driving test the previous year.
a) would pass b) passes c) had passed d) was passing

35 Hany told me that he .... as a sales assistant before he left his job.
a) works b) had been working c) is working d) would work

36 Omar explained that his uncle .... him to find another job.
a) will encourage b) would encourage
c) can encourage d) was encouraging

37 Kareem said that he was a sociable person and so he .... talking to customers.
a) will enjoy b) would enjoy c) enjoys d) was enjoying

38 I promised that I .... Mr Othman on Saturday morning.
a) would contact b) couldn't contact c) contact d) contacted

39 Mohamed said that his sister .... her friends at the cinema that night.
a) meets b) is meeting c) was meeting d) has met

40 A man .... something that caused a fight between the two families for years.
a) said b) told c) complained d) spoke

41 He said that he .... to become a manager the following year.
a) would expect b) expects c) will expect d) expected

42 My mother told Amira that she .... better clean up the mess in her room.
a) had had b) had c) was d) would

43 My mother always says that I .... wear warmer clothes.
a) will b) shall c) should d) may

44 My father said that he .... me a new mobile until I had passed my next exams.
a) didn't buy b) hadn't bought c) won't buy d) wouldn't buy

Previous Exams Exercises

5. Dina informed us that her baby .... then. (ش.ع ٢٠١٩)
   a) had cried   b) had been crying   c) cried   d) was crying
6. Mona promised that she .... home tomorrow. (ش.ع ٢٠١١)
   a) be   b) would have been   c) will have been   d) will be
7. Monira has just told Amira that they .... to their friend's wedding tonight. (ش.ع ٢٠١٩)
   a) would go   b) have gone   c) are going   d) were going
8. At the wedding party yesterday, the bride said .... the happiest day of her life. (ش.ع ٢٠١٤)
   a) today was   b) that day was   c) yesterday had   d) that day had
9. Ahmed promised that he .... me as soon as the plane lands. (ش.ع ٢٠١٥)
   a) will phone   b) would phone   c) phoned   d) phones
10. The boy denied the theft and said that he .... the car then. (الأزهر ٢٠١٦)
    a) cleaning   b) is cleaning
    c) had been cleaning   d) had cleaned

Language Functions

Asking and answering personal questions: السؤال والإجابة عن أسئلة شخصية:

Questions	Answers
• Do you have any work experience?	• Yes, I have worked in ...... for ...... years.
• What are your interests and hobbies?	• I'm interested in ...... and ....
• Which exams have you passed?	• I have got GSEC and BA in ....
• Where are you from?	• I'm from ....
• Which skills have you got?	• I can speak ...... and ....
• Where were you born and what's your nationality?	• I was born in .... I'm ....
• Can you tell me about any awards or achievements?	• I won an award for ....

Skills Exercises

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Twenty years ago, kids in school had never even heard of the internet. Now, I'll bet you can't find a single person in your school who hasn't at least heard of it. In fact, many of us use it on a regular basis and even have access to it from our homes! The 'net' in internet really stands for network. A network is two or more computers connected together so that information can be shared, or sent from one computer to another. The internet is a vast resource for all types of information. You may enjoy using it to do research for a school project, downloading your favourite songs or communicating with friends and family. Information is accessed through web pages that companies, organisations and individuals create and post.

It's a kind of like a giant bulletin board that the whole world uses! But since anyone can put anything on the internet, you also have to be careful and use your best judgment and a little common sense. Just because you read something on a piece of paper someone sticks on a bulletin board doesn't mean it's good information, or even correct, for that matter. So you have to be sure that whoever posted the information knows what they're talking about, especially if you're doing research! But what if you're just emailing people? You still have to be very careful. If you've never met the person that you're communicating with online, you could be on dangerous ground! You should never give out any personal information to someone you don't know, not even your name! And just like you can't believe the information on every website out there, you can't rely on what strangers you 'meet' on the internet tell you either. Just like you could make up things about yourself to tell someone, someone else could do the same to you!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What does the term 'net' in the word internet stand for?

a) Nethermost. b) Nether.
c) Netherlands. d) Network.

2. How is information accessed on the internet?

a) Through web pages. b) Through radios.
c) Through music. d) Through cameras.

3. **What is ONE thing you should not do when communicating with someone you don't know online?**
   a) Don't look at their profiles.
   b) Don't give any information.
   c) Don't get any information.
   d) Do not give out personal information.

4. **What do the underlined words "do the same" mean?**
   a) Chat with others.
   b) Log on the net.
   c) Lie to others.
   d) Make things.

B) Answer the following questions:

5. Give two reasons why we use the internet.
6. What precautions should you follow while using the internet? (Mention two.)
7. Find words from the passage that mean: a) persons b) depend
8. What do you think the disadvantages of the internet? (Mention two of them.)

2 Write an essay of about (180) words on the following topic:

"Which do you prefer; a governmental job or a private business?"

A) Translate into Arabic:

1. Finding a job requires two main tasks: understanding your skills and understanding the job market. You should apply for the job that needs your skills.
2. There are two kinds of skills that people applying for a job need, hard skills and personal skills. Successful candidates will make sure to put both skill sets on display.
3. One of the most important aims of the United Nations is encouraging cooperation among nations. This is clear in the efforts, which its different organisations do to solve problems.
4. Many studies support that a loving and active father in a child's life improves the outcome of children. They are more likely to do well at school and have self-esteem.
5. Newspaper is considered a record of the current events. However, the role of a newspaper are more than being only a document of events. It has become a mark of civilisation.
6. Every economic reform has its costs; one of them is the rise in prices. It is always hoped that this will not last for many years so that people wouldn't suffer more.





B) Translate into English:

١- لم تعد الوظيفة الحكومية هدفًا يسعى إليه الشباب الطموح المتطلع إلى غد أفضل، كما تشجع الحكومة هذا الاتجاه بتوفير القروض الميسرة لمشروعات الشباب.

٢-علينا بالاهتمام بالتعليم والبحث العلمى ودراسة سوق العمل للقضاء على البطالة التى أصبحت أخطر المشكلات التى تواجه المجتمع المصرى بعواقبها الوخيمة.

٣- بسبب زيادة شعبية وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى أصبحت أهم الوسائل التى يلجأ اليها المعلنون والباحثون عن الوظائف فى جميع المجالات.

٤- يكره الكثيرون التلقائية؛ لأنهم يكرهون المفاجأة التى تربك التفكير لذلك يلجأ الإباء الى توجيه الأطفال الذين يتميزون بالبراءة والتلقائية إلى تغيير سلوكهم.

Enrich your Vocabulary

current events	الأحداث الجارية	outcome	الناتج/ الحصيلة
economic reform	الإصلاح الاقتصادى	popularity	شعبية
eliminate	يمحو/ يقضى على	require	يتطلب
governmental	حكومى	spontaneity	التلقائية
loans	القروض	unemployment	البطالة
no longer	لم تعد	the United Nations	الأمم المتحدة

Open General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 She was a good lawyer with a/an .... for honesty and diligence.
a) image b) reputation
c) prestige d) base

2 My uncle runs a farm that is famous for its organic ....
a) produce b) product
c) productive d) producer

3 If you work harder, improvement will come by ....
a) grades b) ranks
c) degrees d) certificates

4 Many economics graduates enter the accountancy ....
a) job b) work
c) position d) profession

5 Liverpool Football Club .... in popularity in the Arab world after Mohamed Salah played for it.
a) gained b) got
c) earned d) won

6 The .... of a new coach for the Egyptian football team caused a lot of debate.
a) accountancy b) appointment
c) applying d) qualification

7 Anis Mansour was a .... and fast article writer.
a) affluent b) admiring
c) invading d) fluent

8 My niece is studying .... at the University of Cairo to be a chemist.
a) bakery b) accounting
c) pharmacy d) physics

9 Laser techniques have many .... in medical treatments.
a) applications b) quantities
c) research d) accounts

10 Many people applied for these jobs, but only a few make the ....
a) access b) certificate
c) degree d) grade

11 .... have you been in London?
a) How long ago
b) Where
c) When
d) How long

12 I'm always right to say that English is very important, ...?
a) are I
b) aren't I
c) am I
d) aren't it

13 All the guests kept smiling at ....
a) other
b) another
c) each other
d) the others

14 I'll wait in this room .... you get back.
a) until
b) while
c) before
d) as well as

15 Ahmed had missed his flight by the time he .... at the airport.
a) had arrived
b) was arriving
c) arrived
d) arrives

16 What time .... them tonight?
a) are you seeing
b) do you see
c) you see
d) you are seeing

17 Our new flat is .... than our old one.
a) biggest
b) much big
c) more big
d) much bigger

18 Have you seen Galal's birthday present? It's a/an .... mountain bike.
a) blue, fantastic, Chinese
b) fantastic, blue, Chinese
c) Chinese, blue, fantastic
d) blue, Chinese, fantastic

19 I never .... speaking German when I lived in Berlin. It was hard for me to learn.
a) got used to
b) got used
c) used to
d) be used to

20 She always has a cup of tea .... the afternoons.
a) in
b) on
c) at
d) for



Test 9 Based on Unit 9

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My uncle works in a/an .... company with a very good reputation.
   a) illegal b) damaged c) established d) published
2. My father always said that, man .... forever.
   a) didn't live b) lived c) does not live d) had lived
3. Successful .... for this job will be expected to travel extensively.
   a) applicants b) employers c) applications d) managers
4. He said that he .... to Spain the following week.
   a) went b) will go c) was going d) had gone
5. He said that he would invite more people if he .... a bigger flat.
   a) has b) had c) had had d) will have
6. She said that she .... the children a story the night before when the lights went out.
   a) read b) had read c) was reading d) would read
7. I believe that Salma will .... great things.
   a) predict b) achieve c) hope d) wish
8. Ibrahim said that he was very hungry because he .... only one sandwich for lunch that day.
   a) had b) had had c) has d) was having
9. Hesham likes to organise .... events for the company's employees.
   a) sociable b) sensitive c) social d) circular
10. The news reporter said that burglars .... into the museum the previous night.
    a) broke b) have broken c) were breaking d) had broken
11. She was a very .... student and attended all her lectures.
    a) fluent b) sociable c) conscientious d) lazy
12. She warned me not to go near the campfire because it .... dangerous.
    a) has been b) was c) is d) would be
13. Fatma said that she .... anything else to eat then.
    a) didn't want b) hadn't wanted c) wasn't wanting d) won't want

14 What .... at nine o'clock last Sunday?
a) do you do
b) were you doing
c) have you done
d) would you do

15 Our team lacked .... in the first half, but they improved in the second half.
a) mercy
b) emergency
c) fluency
d) frequency

16 Don't eat too .... chocolate. It's bad for your teeth.
a) a lot of
b) many
c) enough
d) much

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Most of the people who appear most often and most gloriously in the history books are great conquerors and generals, whereas the people who really helped civilisation forward are often never mentioned at all. We do not know who first set a broken leg or calculated the length of the year; but we know all about the killers and destroyers. People think a great deal of them so much that on all the highest pillars in the great cities of the world you will find the figure of a conqueror. I think most people believe that the greatest countries are those that have beaten in battle the greatest number of other countries and ruled over them as conquerors. But they are not the most civilised. Animals fight; and savages also fight; hence to be good at fighting is to be good in the way in which an animal or a savage is good, but it is not to be civilised nations and countries should behave properly towards each other; in a civilised way.

Suppose that we reckon the whole past of living creatures on the earth as one hundred years; then the whole past of man works out about one month. Through this we take man's civilised past at about seven or eight hours. We may estimate his future. Thus mankind is only at the beginning of its civilised life, and I do not expect much as the past of man has been a beastly business; fighting, bullying and hurting.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What does the underlined word "reckon" mean?
a) Ignore.
b) Count.
c) Appreciate.
d) Increase.

2. What happens when people think much of a person?
a) They made him a statue.
b) They can't sleep.
c) They feel happy.
d) They tell him the truth.



3. According to the writer's criterion, what are the greatest countries?

a) Those which build the highest pillars.

b) Those which conquer as many countries as possible.

c) Those which help civilisation forward.

d) Those which glorifies conquerors and killers.

4. Why isn't man civilised as the writer describes?

a) As man's civilised past is little.

c) As man's civilised past is long.

c) As man's civilised past is nothing.

d) As man's civilised past is much.

B) Answer the following questions:

5. Which two types people do we usually see in history books?
6. Why is man mistaken when he glorifies conquerors? (Give two points.)
7. Is the writer optimistic or pessimistic about the future of man? Why?
8. In your opinion, what distinguishes the greatest countries? (Give two points.)

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

Parents have a big influence on developing their children's intellect and intelligence. They can help them realise their potential by reading and speaking to them and by encouraging them know the world around them.

B) Translate into English:

- من ينظر تحت قدمه طوال الوقت لن يتطلع لمجد وتاريخ وأمل يمكن أن يصنعه يومًا ما ولن يرى الطريق أمامه واضحًا.

4 Write an essay of about (180) words on the following topic:

"Think of a novel you have enjoyed reading and you would recommend to other people."

Unit 10 Sir Cecil Spring-Rice: "Day"

Objectives

Listening	:	Listening for gist and for detail; identifying rhythm in literary texts
Grammar	:	Reported questions
Reading	:	Reading for gist, for specific information and to paraphrase
Critical thinking	:	Understanding the importance of nature
Functions	:	Expressing surprise
Writing	:	Writing a report of an interview

